This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

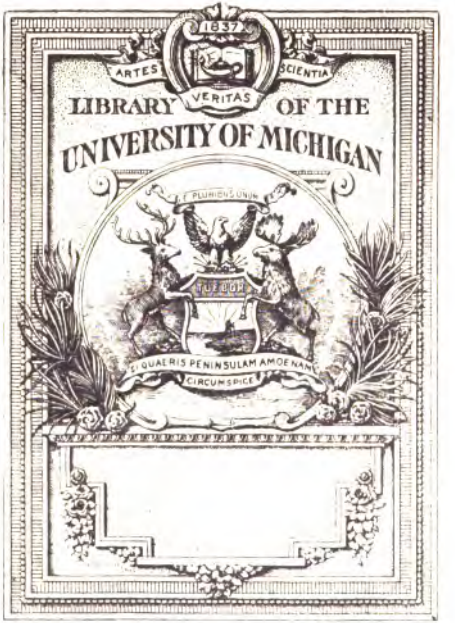
A 444011

MANUAL

FOR

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND PRIVATES OF INFANTRY OF THE ORGANIZED MILITIA AND VOLUNTEERS OF THE UNITED STATES

1914


1837
ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
E PLURIBUS UNUM
TUEBOR
SI QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM
CIRCUMSPICE

U
143
.A5
1914

U. S. War Dept. General Staff

WAR DEPARTMENT : OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF

MANUAL

FOR

Noncommissioned Officers and Privates of Infantry of the Organized Militia and Volunteers of the United States

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1914

WAR DEPARTMENT

Document No. 476

OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF

ADDITIONAL COPIES
OF THIS PUBLICATION MAY BE PROCURED FROM
THE SUPERINTENDENT OF DOCUMENTS
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON, D. C.
AT
45 CENTS PER COPY

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, July 16, 1914.

The following Manual for Noncommissioned Officers and Privates of Infantry of the Organized Militia and Volunteers of the United States, compiled in the Division of Militia Affairs, under the direction of Brig. Gen. Albert L. Mills, General Staff, Chief, Division of Militia Affairs, is approved and herewith published for the information and government of all concerned.

This manual is a revision of a manual for privates of infantry of the Organized Militia of the United States, compiled in 1909 in the Division of Militia Affairs.

By order of the Secretary of War.

W. W. WOTHERSPOON,
Major General, Chief of Staff.

281146

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Military courtesy and discipline:	
Oath of enlistment	7
Obedience	7
Loyalty	8
Discipline	9
Military courtesy and saluting	9
Courtesies in conversation	12
Rank and precedence	13
Rules and regulations for the militia	15
Uniforms	16
Service kit	17
Surplus kit	18
Blanket rolls	19
The ration	19
Individual cooking	20
The rifle	25
Care of the rifle	26
Preliminary training in marksmanship:	
Sight adjustment	29
Table of sight corrections	31
Aiming	31
Battle sight	32
Trigger squeeze	33
Firing positions	34
Calling the shot	35
Coordination	36
Advice to riflemen	36
Target practice course	38
Infantry drill regulations:	
Definitions	45
Introduction	47
Orders, commands, and signals	53
School of the soldier	59
School of the squad	71
Manual of tent pitching	85

	Page.
Manual of the bayonet	95
Manual of interior guard duty	119
Formal guard mounting	159
Informal guard mounting	163
Combat	167
Marching and camping	175
Patrolling	187
Advance guards	198
Rear guards	200
Flank guards	200
Outposts	201
Rifle trenches	207
Message blanks	210
Simple sketching	212
Signals and codes	215
Personal hygiene	221
Care of the feet	225
First aid rules	226
Articles of war	238
Spanish vocabulary	253
Principles of Infantry training	262

MANUAL

FOR

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND PRIVATES OF INFANTRY

OF THE

ORGANIZED MILITIA AND VOLUNTEERS OF THE UNITED STATES.

Every soldier on enlisting in the Regular Army takes upon himself the following obligation:

"And I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the United States of America; that I will serve them honestly and faithfully against all their enemies whomsoever; and that I will obey the orders of the President of the United States, and the orders of the officers appointed over me according to the Rules and Articles of War."

Every soldier enlisting in the National Guard and Volunteers takes upon himself an obligation of a similar nature.

OBEDIENCE.

The very first paragraph in the Army Regulations reads:

"All persons in the military service are required to obey strictly and to execute promptly the lawful orders of their superiors."

Obedience is the first and last duty of a soldier. It is the foundation upon which all military efficiency is built. It makes it an army becomes a mob, while with it a mob becomes a mob and becomes possessed of much of the power of an organized force. It is a quality that is demanded of every person in the Army, from the highest to the lowest. The enlisted man binds himself, by his enlistment oath. Each officer, in accepting his commission, binds himself the same solemn obligation.

Obey strictly and execute promptly the orders of your superiors. It is enough that [illegible]

order, whether he be an officer, a noncommissioned officer, or a private acting as such, is your lawful superior. You may not like him, you may not respect him, but you must respect his position and authority, and reflect honor and credit upon yourself and your profession by yielding to all superiors that complete and unhesitating obedience which is the pleasure as well as the duty of every true soldier.

Orders must be strictly carried out. It is not sufficient to comply with only that part which suits you or which involves no work or danger or hardship. Nor is it proper or permissible, when you are ordered to do a thing in a certain way or to accomplish a work in a definitely prescribed manner, for you to obtain the same results by other methods.

Obedience must be **prompt and unquestioning.** When any soldier (and this word includes officers as well as enlisted men) receives an order, it is not for him to consider whether the order is a good one or not, whether it would have been better had such an order never been given, or whether the duty might be better performed by some one else, or at some other time, or in some other manner. His duty is, first, to understand just what the order requires, and, second, to proceed at once to carry out the order to the best of his ability.

LOYALTY.

But even with implicit obedience you may yet fail to measure up to that high standard of duty which is at once the pride and glory of every true soldier. Not until you carry out the desires and wishes of your superiors in a hearty, willing, and cheerful manner are you meeting all the requirements of your profession. For an order is but the will of your superior, however it may be expressed. Loyalty means that you are for your organization and its officers and noncommissioned officers—not against them; that you always extend your most earnest and hearty support to those in authority. No soldier is a loyal soldier who is a knocker, or a grumbler, or a shirker. Just one man of this class in a company breeds discontent and dissatisfaction among many others. You should, therefore, not only guard against doing such things yourself, but should discourage such actions among any of your comrades.

DISCIPLINE.

When, by long-continued drill and subordination, you have learned your duties, and obedience becomes second nature, you have acquired discipline. It can not be acquired in a day nor a month. It is a growth. It is the habit of obedience. To teach this habit of obedience is the main object of the close-order drill, and, if good results are to be expected, the greatest attention must be paid to even the smallest details. The company or squad must be formed promptly at the prescribed time—not a minute or even a second late. All must wear the exact uniform prescribed and in the exact manner prescribed. When at attention there must be no gazing about, no raising of hands, no chewing or spitting in ranks. The manual of arms and all movements must be executed absolutely as prescribed. A drill of this kind teaches discipline. A careless, sloppy drill breeds disobedience and insubordination.

MILITARY COURTESY.

In all walks of life men who are gentlemanly and of good breeding are always respectful and courteous to those about them. It helps to make life move along more smoothly. In civil life this courtesy is shown by the custom of tipping the hat to ladies, shaking hands with friends, and greeting persons with a nod or a friendly "Good morning," etc.

In the Army courtesy is just as necessary, and for the same reasons. It helps to keep the great machine moving without friction.

"Courtesy among military men is indispensable to discipline; respect to superiors will not be confined to obedience on duty, but will be extended on all occasions." (Par. 4, Army Regulations, 1913.)

One method of extending this courtesy is by saluting. When in ranks the question of what a private should do is simple—he obeys any command that is given. It is when out of ranks that a private must know how and when to salute.

SALUTING.

In the old days the free men of Europe were all allowed to carry weapons, and when they met each would hold up his right hand to show that he had no weapon in it, and that they met as friends. Slaves or serfs, however, were not allowed to

carry weapons, and slunk past the free men without making any sign. In this way the salute came to be the symbol or sign by which soldiers (free men) might recognize each other. The lower classes began to imitate the soldiers in this respect, although in a clumsy, apologetic way, and thence crept into civil life the custom of raising the hand or nodding as one passed an acquaintance. The soldiers, however, kept their individual salute, and purposely made it intricate and difficult to learn in order that it could be acquired only by the constant training all real soldiers received. To this day armies have preserved their salute, and when correctly done it is at once recognized and never mistaken for that of the civilian. All soldiers should be careful to execute the salute exactly as prescribed. The civilian, or the imitation soldier, who tries to imitate the military salute, invariably makes some mistake which shows that he is not a real soldier; he gives it in an apologetic manner, he fails to stand or march at attention, his blouse is unbuttoned or hat on awry, or he fails to look the person saluted in the eye. There is a wide difference in the method of rendering and meaning between the civilian salute as used by friends in passing, or by servants to their employers, and the MILITARY SALUTE, the symbol and sign of the military profession.

Enlisted men under arms or with their hats on salute all officers of the Regular Army, the Navy, the Marine Corps, the Organized Militia of the United States, the Volunteers, and all officers of foreign armies; also the Commander in Chief (President or governor). Privates do not salute noncommissioned officers. The national color or standard, when not cased (i. e., in waterproof cover), is saluted by all officers and men.

To salute with the hand, first assume the position of a soldier or march at attention. Look the officer you are to salute straight in the eye. Then when the proper distance separates you raise the right hand smartly till the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, forearm inclined at about 45 degrees, hand and wrist straight. Continue to look the officer you are saluting straight in the eye, and keep your hand in the position of salute until the officer acknowledges the salute or until he has passed. Then drop the hand smartly to the side. The salute is given with the right hand only.

To salute with the rifle, bring the rifle to right shoulder arms if not already there. Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger touching the end of the cocking piece. Look the officer saluted in the eye. When the officer has acknowledged the salute or has passed, drop the left hand smartly to the side and turn the head and eyes to the front. The rifle salute may also be executed from the order or trail. See paragraph 94, Infantry Drill Regulations.

Always stand or march at attention before and during the salute. The hat should be on straight; blouse completely buttoned up, and hands out of the pockets.

Saluting distance is that within which recognition of rank is easy. In general it is about 30 paces. In approaching or passing within saluting distance, individuals or bodies of troops exchange salutes when at a distance of about 6 paces. If they do not approach each other that closely, the salute is exchanged at the point of nearest approach within saluting distance.

Salute the national color or standard in the same way that you would an officer. (The national flag belonging to dismounted organizations is called a color; to mounted organizations, a standard.)

Uncovering is not a form of the prescribed salute, and the salute is executed only when covered. Do not salute when marching in double time.

Before addressing an officer, an enlisted man makes the prescribed salute with the rifle if he is armed with it, or, if unarmed and covered, with the right hand. He also makes the same salute after receiving a reply. If uncovered he stands at attention without saluting. A mounted soldier dismounts before addressing an officer not mounted.

A noncommissioned officer or private in command of a detachment without arms salutes all officers with the hand, but if the detachment is armed with the rifle he makes the rifle salute. If armed with the saber he salutes with it.

Indoors an unarmed enlisted man uncovers and stands at attention upon the approach of an officer. If armed, he salutes as heretofore prescribed. (For the purpose of saluting, the drill floor of an armory is considered as outdoors, the remainder of the armory as indoors.)

When an officer enters a room where there are soldiers, the word "Attention" is given by some one who perceives him, when all rise and remain standing in the position of a soldier, until the officer leaves the room or commands "Rest." Soldiers at meals do not rise but cease talking and eating.

Soldiers actually at work or engaged in athletic exercises do not salute unless spoken to. **Prisoners are not permitted to salute**; they merely come to attention if not actually at work.

Officers will at all times acknowledge the courtesies of enlisted men by returning, in the manner prescribed, the salutes given. When several officers in company are saluted, all return it.

At retreat, when the "**Star Spangled Banner**" is played by the band, or "**To the Color**" is played by the field music, while the flag is being lowered, all officers and enlisted men out of ranks will face toward the flag (the post or camp flag), stand at attention, and render the prescribed salute at the last note of the music.

Whenever the Star Spangled Banner is played at a formal occasion other than retreat all officers and enlisted men present will stand at attention, facing toward the music, retaining that position until the last note of the air, and then salute. The playing of the Star Spangled Banner as a part of a medley is prohibited in the military service.

COURTESIES IN CONVERSATION.

In speaking to an officer, always stand at attention and use the word "Sir." Examples:

"Sir, Private Brown, Company B, reports as orderly."

"Sir, the first sergeant directed me to report to the captain."

(Question by an officer:) "To what company do you belong?"

(Answer:) "Company H, sir."

(Question by an officer:) "Has first call for drill sounded?"

(Answer:) "No, sir;" or "Yes, sir; it sounded about five minutes ago."

(Question by an officer:) "Can you tell me, please, where Major Smith's tent is?"

(Answer:) "Yes, sir; I'll take you to it."

Use the third person in speaking to an officer. Examples:

"Does the Lieutenant wish," etc.

"Did the Captain send for me?"

In delivering a message from one officer to another, always use the form similar to the following: "Lieutenant A presents his compliments to Captain B and states," etc. This form is not used when the person sending or receiving the message is an enlisted man.

In all official conversation, refer to other soldiers by their titles, thus: Colonel A, Sergeant B, Private C.

Never go to any officer to make a request or complaint without first asking permission to do so from the first sergeant.

RANK AND PRECEDENCE OF OFFICERS AND NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS.

The following are the grades of rank of officers and noncommissioned officers:

1. Lieutenant general.
2. Major general.
3. Brigadier general.
4. Colonel.
5. Lieutenant colonel.
6. Major.
7. Captain.
8. First lieutenant.
9. Second lieutenant.
10. Veterinarian, Cavalry, and Field Artillery; pay clerk, Quartermaster Corps.
11. Cadet.
12. (*a*) Sergeant major, regimental; sergeant major, senior grade, Coast Artillery Corps; (*b*) master electrician, Quartermaster Corps; master electrician, Coast Artillery Corps; master signal electrician; chief musician; (*c*) engineer, Coast Artillery Corps.
13. (*a*) Ordnance sergeant; quartermaster sergeant, Quartermaster Corps; sergeant, first class, Hospital Corps; electrician sergeant, first class, Coast Artillery Corps; (*b*) sergeant, first class, Quartermaster Corps; first-class signal sergeant.
14. Quartermaster sergeant and commissary sergeant, regimental; electrician sergeant, second class, Coast Artillery Corps; master gunner, Coast Artillery Corps.
15. Sergeant major, squadron and battalion; sergeant major, junior grade, Coast Artillery Corps; color sergeant; battalion quartermaster sergeant, Engineers and Field Artillery.

16. (*a*) First sergeant; drum major; (*b*) principal musician; chief trumpeter; fireman, Coast Artillery Corps.

17. Sergeant; quartermaster sergeant, company; stable sergeant.

18. Corporal.

In each grade and subgrade, date of commission, appointment, or warrant determines the order of precedence.

The insignia of rank appearing on the shoulder straps, or shoulder loops of officers, are as follows:

General: Coat of arms and two stars.

Lieutenant general: One large star and two smaller ones.

Major general: Two silver stars.

Brigadier general: One silver star.

Colonel: One silver spread eagle.

Lieutenant colonel: One silver leaf.

Major: One gold leaf.

Captain: Two silver bars.

First lieutenant: One silver bar.

The grade of noncommissioned officers is indicated by chevrons worn on the sleeve.

LAND FORCES OF THE UNITED STATES.

The land forces of the United States consist of the Regular Army, the Organized Land Militia when called into the service of the United States, and such volunteer forces as Congress may authorize.

In peace the Army of the United States consists, ordinarily, of the Regular Army; but whenever the United States is invaded or in danger of invasion from any foreign nation, or of rebellion against the authority of the Government of the United States, or the President is unable with the regular forces at his command to execute the laws of the Union, he may call into the military service of the United States all or any part of the militia organized as a land force.

In war, or when war is imminent, the Army of the United States, after the whole or part of the Organized Land Militia has been called into the service, may be further augmented by the employment of volunteers. When the raising of a volunteer force has been authorized by Congress, and after the Organized Land Militia of any arm or class has been called into the mili-

tary service of the United States volunteers of that particular arm or class may be raised and accepted into said service regardless of the extent to which other arms or classes of militia may have been called into the service.

RULES AND REGULATIONS, ETC.

The armies of the United States are governed by certain rules and regulations called "The Articles of War."

The Militia (National Guard) when called into the actual service of the United States shall be subject to the same rules and articles of war as the Regular troops of the United States.

When not in the actual service of the United States, the Militia is governed by such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the State in which the Militia is organized.

The control of the Organized Militia when not in the service of the United States, which is vested in the Federal Government, through constitutional provisions in regard to organization, armament, and discipline (training) is laid down in the Regulations of the War Department for the Organized Militia, and in the various instruction manuals.

The following list includes the offenses most often committed by soldiers, generally through ignorance or carelessness rather than viciousness. Violations of any rule or regulation should be carefully guarded against, since they not only subject the offender to punishment, but also bring discredit on his comrades, his organization, and on the military profession:

1. Selling, pawning, or, through neglect, losing or spoiling any Government property, such as uniforms, blankets, equipment, ammunition, etc.
2. Disobedience of the orders of any officer or noncommissioned officer.
3. Disrespect to an officer or noncommissioned officer.
4. Absence from camp without leave.
5. Absence from any drill, formation, or other duty without authority.
6. Drunkenness on duty or off duty, whether in camp or when absent either with or without leave.
7. Bringing liquor into camp.
8. Noisy or disorderly conduct in camp or when absent either with or without leave.

9. Entering on private property, generally for the purpose of stealing fruit, etc.

10. Negligence or carelessness at drill or on other duty, particularly while on guard or as a sentinel over prisoners.

11. Wearing an unauthorized uniform or wearing the uniform in an improper manner.

12. Urinating in or around camp.

13. Failing to salute properly.

14. Disrespect or affront to a sentinel.

UNIFORMS.

Uniforms and clothing issued to enlisted men must not be sold, pawned, loaned, or given away, nor lost or damaged through neglect or carelessness. Any soldier who violates this rule may be tried by a military court and punished.

The **dress uniform** (the blue uniform) consists of the dress cap, dress coat, dress trousers, and tan shoes. The straight, standing, military, white linen collar, showing no opening in front, is always worn with this uniform, with not to exceed one-half inch showing above the collar of the coat. Turn down, piccadilly, or roll collars are not authorized.

When under arms, white gloves, the russet leather belt, and cartridge box are worn.

The **full-dress uniform** is the same as the dress uniform, with the breast cord added.

The **service uniform** is either cotton (summer) or woolen (winter) olive drab.

For duty in the field it consists of the service hat, service coat or sweater, service breeches, olive-drab flannel shirt, leggings, and tan shoes. In cold weather olive-drab woolen gloves are worn; at other times, no gloves.

When not in the field, the service cap is worn instead of the campaign hat. Under arms, white gloves, the russet leather belt, and cartridge box are worn.

Wear the exact uniform prescribed by your commanding officer, whether you are on duty or off duty.

Never wear a mixed uniform, as, for instance, a part of the service uniform with the blue uniform.

Never wear any part of the uniform with civilian clothes. It is very unsoldierly, for example, to wear a civilian overcoat

over the uniform or to wear the uniform overcoat over a civilian suit.

Keep the uniform clean and neat and in good repair.

Grease spots and dust and dirt should be removed as soon as possible.

Rips and tears should be promptly mended.

Missing buttons and cap and collar ornaments should be promptly replaced.

There is but one correct and soldierly way to wear the cap. Never wear it on the back or side of the head.

The service hat should be worn in the regulation shape, peaked with four indentations, and with hat cord neatly adjusted. Do not cover it with pen or pencil marks.

Never appear outside your room or tent with your blouse unbuttoned or collar unhooked. Chevrons, service stripes, and campaign medals and badges are a part of the uniform and must be worn as prescribed.

When blouses are not worn with the service uniform, olive-drab shirts are prescribed.

Suspenders must never be worn exposed to view.

Never appear in breeches without leggings.

Leather leggings should be kept polished. Canvas leggings should be scrubbed when dirty.

Tan (russet leather) shoes should be kept clean and polished.

The overcoat when worn must be buttoned throughout and the collar hooked. When the belt is worn it will be worn outside the overcoat.

THE SERVICE KIT.

The service kit is composed of two parts—(*a*) the field kit, which includes everything the soldier wears or carries with him in the field, and (*b*) the surplus kit, which is carried on the wagons.

The field kit consists of—

(*a*) The clothing worn on the person.

(*b*) Arms and equipment, consisting of—

1 United States magazine rifle, caliber .30.
1 bayonet.
1 bayonet scabbard.
1 gun sling.

1 rifle cartridge belt and fasteners.
1 pair rifle cartridge belt suspenders.
1 first-aid packet.
1 pouch for first-aid packet.
1 canteen.
1 canteen strap.
1 set blanket-roll straps.
1 haversack.
1 meat can.
1 cup.
1 knife.
1 fork.
1 spoon.
1 shelter tent half.
1 shelter tent pole.
5 shelter tent pins.

(*c*) Extra clothing, etc., consisting of—
1 blanket.
1 comb.
1 poncho.
1 soap, cake.
1 stockings, pair.
1 toothbrush.
1 towel.

(*d*) Ammunition, consisting of—
90 rounds ball cartridges, caliber .30.

(*e*) Rations, consisting of—
1 or 2 reserve rations (bacon, hard bread, coffee, sugar, and salt).

(*f*) Intrenching tools, consisting of—
1 pick mattock, and 1 bolo or hand axe, per squad.
3 shovels, intrenching, per squad.

The surplus kit for each man consists of—
1 drawers, pair.
1 shoes, tan, pair.
2 stockings, wool, pair.
1 undershirt.
1 shoe laces, extra, pair.
1 sweater (if issued), or service coat (if not worn).

The surplus kits are packed in surplus kit bags, one for each squad, one for sergeants, and one for cooks and musicians, and

are carried on the company field wagon.[1] Each surplus kit bag contains 1 squad housewife and 1 jointed cleaning rod. Squad leaders are responsible that surplus kit bags are kept in order and fully packed at all times. Men are allowed access to them for the purpose of making substitutions.

To roll the blanket roll: Each man, with his shelter tent spread smoothly on the ground with buttons up and triangular end to the front, folds his blanket once across its length and places it upon the shelter half; fold toward the bottom, edge one-half inch from the square end, the same amount of canvas uncovered at the top and bottom. He then places the parts of the pole on the side of the blanket next the square end of the shelter half, near and parallel to the fold, end of pole about 6 inches from the edge of the blanket; nest the pins similarly near the opposite edge of the blanket and distribute the other articles carried in the roll; folds the triangular end and then the exposed portion of the bottom of the shelter half over the blanket.

The two men in each file roll and fasten the roll of the front and then of the rear rank man. The file closers work similarly two and two, or with the front-rank man of a blank file. Each pair stands on the folded side, rolls the blanket roll closely, and buckles the straps, passing the end of the strap through both keeper and buckle, back over the buckle and under the keeper. With the roll so lying on the ground that the edge of the shelter half can just be seen when looking vertically downward, one end is bent upward and over to meet the other, a clove hitch is taken with the guy rope first around the end to which it is attached and then around the other end, adjusting the length of rope between hitches to suit the wearer.

THE RATION.

A ration is the allowance of food for one man for one day.

In the field there are three kinds of rations issued, as follows:

The *garrison ration* is intended to be issued in kind whenever possible. The approximate net weight of this ration is 4.5 pounds.

---

[1] In campaign or stimulated campaign, when an organization is restricted to its prescribed field-train transportation, surplus kits are stored on the line of communications or other designated place with the permanent camp equipment of the organization.

The *reserve ration* is the simplest efficient ration and constitutes the reserve carried for field service. It consists of—

	Ounces.
Bacon	12
Hard bread	16
Coffee, roasted and ground	1.12
Sugar	2.4
Salt	.16
Approximate net weight.....pounds	2

The *field ration* is the ration prescribed in orders by the commander of the field forces. It consists of the reserve ration, in whole or in part, supplemented by articles requisitioned or purchased locally or shipped from the rear.

In campaign a command carries as a part of its normal equipment the following rations:

(*a*) On each man: At least two days' reserve rations.
(*b*) In the ration section of the field train, for each man: Two days' field and one day's reserve rations.
(*c*) In the supply train: Two days' field rations.

In addition to the foregoing, commanders will require each man on the march to carry the unconsumed portion of the day's ration issued the night before for the noonday meal. Reserve rations are consumed only in case of extreme necessity, when other supplies are not available. They are not to be consumed or renewed without an express order from the officer in command of the troops who is responsible for the provision of supplies, namely, the division commander or other independent-detachment commander. Every officer within the limits of his command is held responsible for the enforcement of this regulation. Reserve rations consumed must be replaced at the first opportunity.

INDIVIDUAL COOKING.

Sometimes rations for several days are issued to the soldier at one time, and in such cases you should be very careful to so use the rations that they will last you the entire period. If you stuff yourself one day, or waste your rations, you will have to starve later on.

Generally the cooking for the company will be done by the company cook, but sometimes every soldier will have to prepare his own meals, using only his field mess kit for the purpose.

The best fire for individual cooking is a small clear one, or, better yet, a few brisk coals. To make such a fire first gather a number of sticks about 1 inch in diameter. These should be dry. Dead limbs adhering to a tree are dryer than those picked up from the ground. Split some of these and shave them up into kindling. Dig a trench in the ground, laid with the wind, about a foot long, 4 inches wide, and 6 inches deep. Start the fire in this trench gradually, piling on the heavier wood as the fire grows. When the trench is full of burning wood allow it a few minutes to burn down to coals and stop blazing high. Then rest the meat can and cup over the trench and start cooking. Either may be supported, if necessary, with green sticks. If you can not scrape a trench in the soil, build one up out of rocks, or with two parallel logs.

The following recipes have been furnished from the office of the Quartermaster General, United States Army:

Coffee.—Fill the tin cup two-thirds full of water and bring to a boil. Add one heaping spoonful of coffee and stir well, adding one spoonful of sugar if desired. Boil five minutes and then set it to the side of the fire to simmer for about ten minutes. Then, to clear the coffee, throw in a spoonful or two of cold water. This coffee is of medium strength and is within the limit of the ration if made but twice a day.

Cocoa.—Take two-thirds of a tin cupful of water, bring to a boil, add one heaping spoonful of cocoa, and stir until dissolved. Add one spoonful of sugar, if desired, and boil for five minutes.

Chocolate.—Take two-thirds of a tin cupful of water, bring to a boil, add a piece of chocolate about the size of a hickory nut, breaking or cutting it into small pieces and stirring until dissolved. Add one spoonful of sugar, if desired, and boil for five minutes.

Tea.—Take two-thirds of a tin cupful of water, bring to a boil, add one-half of a level spoonful of tea, and then let it stand or "draw" for three minutes. If allowed to stand longer, the tea will get bitter, unless separated from the tea leaves.

MEATS.

Bacon.—Cut slices about five to the inch, three of which should generally be sufficient for one man for one meal. Place in a mess pan with about one-half inch of cold water. Let come to a boil and then pour the water off. Fry over a brisk fire, turning the bacon once and quickly browning it. Remove the bacon to lid of mess pan, leaving the grease for frying potatoes, onions, rice, flapjacks, etc., according to recipe.

Fresh meat (to fry).—To fry, a small amount of grease (one to two spoonfuls is necessary). Put grease in the mess pan and let come to a smoking temperature, then drop in the steak and, if about one-half inch thick, let fry for about one minute before turning, depending upon whether it is desired it shall be rare, medium, or well done. Then turn and fry briskly as before. Salt and pepper to taste.

Applies to beef, veal, pork, mutton, venison, etc.

Fresh meat (to broil).—Cut in slices about one inch thick, from half as large as the hand to four times that size. Sharpen a stick or branch of convenient length—say, from two to four feet long—and weave the point of the stick through the steak several times, so that it may be readily turned over a few brisk coals or on the windward side of a small fire. Allow to brown nicely, turning frequently. Salt and pepper to taste. Meat with considerable fat is preferred, though any meat may be broiled in this manner.

Fresh meat (to stew).—Cut into chunks from one-half inch to one inch cubes. Fill cup about one-third full of meat and cover with about one inch of water. Let boil or simmer about one hour, or until tender. Add such fibrous vegetables as carrots, turnips, or cabbage, cut into small chunks, soon after the meat is put on to boil, and potatoes, onions, or other tender vegetables when the meat is about half done. Amount of vegetables to be added, about the same as meat, depending upon supply and taste. Salt and pepper to taste. Applies to all fresh meats and fowls. The proportion of meat and vegetables used varies with their abundance, and fixed quantities can not be adhered to. Fresh fish can be handled as above, except that it is cooked much quicker, and potatoes and onions and canned corn are the only vegetables generally used with it, thus making a chowder. A slice of bacon would greatly improve the flavor. May be conveniently cooked in mess pan or tin cup.

VEGETABLES.

Potatoes (fried).—Take two medium-sized potatoes or one large one (about one-half pound), peel and cut into slices about one-fourth inch thick and scatter well in the mess pan in which the grease remains after frying the bacon. Add sufficient water to half cover the potatoes, cover with the lid to keep the moisture in, and let come to a boil for about fifteen to twenty minutes. Remove the cover and dry as desired. Salt and pepper to taste. During the cooking the bacon already prepared may be kept on the cover, which is most conveniently placed bottom side up over the cooking vegetables.

Onions (fried).—Same as potatoes.

Potatoes (boiled).—Peel two medium-sized potatoes (about one-half pound) or one large one, and cut in coarse chunks of about the same size—say one and one-half inch cubes. Place in mess pan and three-fourths fill with water. Cover with lid and let boil or simmer for fifteen or twenty minutes. They are done when easily penetrated with a sharp stick. Pour off the water and let dry out for one or two minutes over hot ashes or light coals.

Potatoes (baked).—Take two medium-sized potatoes (about one-half pound) or one large one cut in half. Lay in a bed of light coals and cover with same and smother with ashes. Do not disturb for thirty or forty minutes, when they should be done.

Canned tomatoes.—One two-pound can is generally sufficient for five men.

Stew.—Pour into the mess pan one man's allowance of tomatoes and add about two large hardtacks broken into small pieces and let come to a boil. Add salt and pepper to taste, or add a pinch of salt and one-fourth spoonful of sugar.

Or, having fried the bacon, pour the tomatoes into the mess pan, the grease remaining, and add, if desired, two broken hardtacks. Set over a brisk fire and let come to a boil.

Or, heat the tomatoes just as they come from the can, adding two pinches of salt and one-half spoonful of sugar, if desired.

Or, especially in hot weather, eaten cold with hard bread, they are very palatable.

Rice.—Take about two-thirds of a tin cupful of water, bring to a boil, add four heaping spoonfuls of rice, and boil until the

grains are soft enough to be easily mashed between the fingers (about twenty minutes). Add two pinches of salt and, after stirring, pour off the water and empty rice out on mess pan. Bacon grease goes good on rice, or sugar may be added.

Corn meal, fine hominy, oat meal.—Take about one-third of a tin cupful of water, bring to a boil, add four heaping spoonfuls of the meal or hominy, and boil about twenty minutes. Then add about two pinches of salt and stir well.

Dried beans and peas.—Put four heaping spoonfuls in about two-thirds of a tin cupful of water and boil until soft. This generally takes from three to four hours. Add one pinch of salt. About half an hour before the beans are done add one slice of bacon.

HOT BREADS.

Flapjack.—Take six spoonfuls of flour and one-third spoonful of baking powder and mix thoroughly (or dry mix in a large pan before issue, at the rate of twenty-five pounds of flour and three half cans of baking powder for one hundred men). Add sufficient cold water to make a batter that will drip freely from the spoon, adding a pinch of salt. Pour into the mess pan, which should contain the grease from fried bacon, or a spoonful of butter or fat, and place over medium hot coals, sufficient to bake so that in from five to seven minutes the flapjack may be turned by a quick toss of the pan. Fry from five to seven minutes longer, or until, by examination, it is found to be done.

Hoe cake.—Hoe cake is made exactly the same as flapjacks by substituting *corn meal* for *flour*.

Emergency rations.—Detailed instructions as to the manner of preparing the emergency ration are found on the label of each can. Remember that even a very limited amount of bacon, or hard bread, or both, consumed with the emergency ration makes it far more palatable, and generally extends the period during which it can be consumed with relish. For this reason it would be better to husband the supply of hard bread and bacon for use with the emergency ration when it becomes evident that the latter must be consumed, rather than to retain the emergency ration to the last extremity and force its exclusive use for a longer period than two or three days.

THE RIFLE.

The rifle now used by the Regular Army and the Organized Militia is the United States magazine rifle, model of 1903, caliber .30.

It is 43.212 inches long and weighs 8.69 pounds.

The bayonet weighs 1 pound and the blade is 16 inches long.

The rifle is sighted for ranges up to 2,850 yards.

The maximum range, when elevated at an angle of 45 degrees, is 5,465 yards (184 yards over 3 miles).

The smooth bore of the rifle is 0.30 inch in diameter. It is then rifled 0.004 inch deep, making the diameter from the bottom of one groove to the bottom of the opposite groove 0.308 inch. The rifling makes one complete turn in each 10 inches of the barrel.

The accompanying plate shows the names of the principal parts of the rifle.

The only parts of a rifle that an enlisted man is permitted to take apart are the bolt mechanism and the magazine mechanism. Learn how to do this from your squad leader, for you must know how in order to keep your rifle clean. Never remove the hand guard or the trigger guard, nor take the sights apart unless you have special permission from a commissioned officer.

The cartridge used for the rifle is called the .30-caliber model 1906 cartridge. There are four types of cartridges.

The ball cartridge consists of the brass case or shell, the primer, the charge of smokeless powder, and the bullet. The bullet has a sharp point, is composed of a lead core and a jacket of cupro nickel (German silver), and weighs 150 grains. The bullet of this cartridge, when fired from the rifle, starts with an initial velocity at the muzzle of 2,700 feet per second.

The blank cartridge contains a paper cup instead of a bullet. It is dangerous up to 100 feet. Firing with blank cartridges at a represented enemy at ranges less than 100 yards is prohibited.

The guard cartridge has a smaller charge of powder than the ball cartridge, and five cannelures encircle the body of the shell at about the middle to distinguish it from the ball cartridge. It is intended for use on guard or in riot duty, and gives good results up to 200 yards. The range of 100 yards requires a sight elevation of 450 yards, and the range of 200 yards requires an elevation of 650 yards.

The dummy cartridge is tin plated and the shell is provided with six longitudinal corrugations and three circular holes. The primer contains no percussion composition. It is intended for drill purposes to accustom the soldier to the operation of loading the rifle.

All cartridges are secured five in a clip to enable five cartridges to be inserted into the magazine at one motion. Sixty ball cartridges in 12 clips are packed in a cloth bandoleer to facilitate issue and carrying. When full the bandoleer weighs about 3.88 pounds. Bandoleers are packed 20 in a box, or 1,200 rounds in all. The full box weighs 99 pounds.

CARE OF THE RIFLE.

Every part of the rifle must be kept free from rust, dust, and dirt. A dirty or rusty rifle is a sure sign that the soldier does not realize the value of his weapon, and that his training is incomplete. The rifle you are armed with is the most accurate in the world. If it gets dirty or rusty it will deteriorate in its accuracy and working efficiency, and no subsequent care will restore it to its original condition. The most important part of the rifle to keep clean is the bore. If, after firing, the bore is left dirty over night, it will be badly rusted in the morning, therefore your rifle must be cleaned not later than the evening of the day on which it was fired. The fouling of the blank cartridge is as dangerous to the bore as the fouling of the ball cartridge.

For cleaning you need one of the long brass cleaning rods (barrack rods), and a number of strong flannel patches about an inch square, the exact size being such that but little force is required to push them through the bore. A very tight patch will sooner or later result in the rod and patch getting stuck in the bore, and then one is very likely to ruin the bore in trying to get the rod out.

Oil will not clean the bore of the rifle. You must use some suitable alkali. The cleaning material issued to your company contains two of these—ammonia, 28 per cent (stronger ammonia, a liquid, in bottles), and sal soda. Remove the bolt from the rifle. Wet a flannel patch with this ammonia,

or with a saturated solution of the sal soda, and with your little finger push it down into the well of the receiver and center it over the opening of the chamber. Hold the rifle, breech up, with the muzzle resting on a wood floor or on a clean chip of wood. Use the cleaning rod from the breech. Center the patch with the tip of the rod and carefully press it into the bore. Run the patch back and forth through the bore five or six times, scrubbing the bore thoroughly from chamber to muzzle. Then push the patch out at the muzzle. Continue to scrub with two or three other patches wet with the cleaner. Then scrub with half a dozen dry, clean patches until the bore is thoroughly clean and dry. Either of the cleaners will rust the bore if allowed to dry and evaporate on it. Finally oil the bore with a patch greased with cosmic, sperm oil, or any other oil with a good body. Do not use bacon grease.

If the ammonia is used to clean with no further attention to the bore is necessary, but if sal soda is used the rifle should be cleaned again for the next two or three days to stop any rusting that may start. In active service it may be that neither of these cleaners will be available. In such a case remove both the bolt and magazine mechanism, make a funnel from a piece of oiled paper, and pour boiling water through the bore, then scrub dry with clean patches and oil the bore.

After cleaning the bore wipe the entire outside of the rifle and the outside and inside of the bolt and magazine with an oily rag, and put a few drops of oil on the bearing surfaces of the bolt. Always wipe the rifle off with the oily rag after handling it with sweaty hands, as perspiration will rust the steel quickly. Also clean the entire rifle most thoroughly after it has been exposed to rain.

After cleaning the bore of the rifle and wiping it dry and before you oil it, hold the breech up to the light and examine the bore from the muzzle. If you see small smears and lumps of bright metal adhering to the bore near the muzzle this is metal fouling, and you should at once take the rifle to the quartermaster sergeant to have this removed. (For method of removing metal fouling see Circular No. 16, Division of Militia Affairs, 1911.)

Never attempt to polish any part that is blued. If rust appears, remove by rubbing with oil. Never use emery paper,

pomade, or any preparation that cuts or scratches, to clean any part of the rifle.

To beautify and preserve the stock rub with raw linseed oil. The use of any other preparation on the stock is strictly forbidden.

Always handle your rifle with care. Don't throw it around as though it was a club. Don't stand it up again anything so that it rests against the front sight. Don't leave a stopper or a rag in the bore; it will cause rust to form at that point. It may also cause the gun barrel to burst if a shot is fired before removing it.

Guard the sights and muzzle carefully from any blow that might injure them.

In coming to the "order arms," lower the piece gently to the ground.

When there is a cartridge in the chamber the piece is always carried locked. In this position the safety lock should be kept turned fully to the right, since if it be turned to the left nearly to the "ready" position and the trigger be pulled, the rifle will be discharged when the safety lock is turned to the "ready" position at any time later on.

Cartridges can not be loaded from the magazine unless the bolt is drawn fully to the rear. When the bolt is closed, or only partly open, the cut-off may be turned up or down as desired, but if the bolt is drawn fully to the rear, the magazine can not be cut off unless the top cartridge or the follower be pressed down slightly and the bolt be pushed forward so that the cut-off may be turned "off."

In the case of a misfire, don't open the bolt immediately, as it may be a hangfire. Misfires are often due to the fact that the bolt handle was not fully pressed down. Sometimes in pulling the trigger the soldier raises the bolt handle without knowing it.

Unless otherwise ordered, arms will be unloaded before being taken to quarters or tents, or as soon as the men using them are relieved from duty.

Keep the working parts oiled.

(In every company there should be at least one copy of the Manual of the Ordnance Department entitled "Description and

Rules for the Management of the U. S. Magazine Rifle," latest edition, price 15 cents. This manual gives the name and a cut of every part of the rifle, explains its use, shows how to take the rifle apart and care for the same, and also gives much other valuable and interesting information.)

PRELIMINARY TRAINING IN MARKSMANSHIP.

Effective rifle fire is generally what counts most in battle. To have effective rifle fire, the men on the firing line must be able to HIT what they are ordered to shoot at. There is no man who can not be taught how to shoot. It is not necessary or even desirable to begin instruction by firing on a rifle range. A perfectly green recruit who has never fired a rifle may be made into a good shot by a little instruction and some preliminary drills and exercises in the armory.

Before a man goes on the range to fire it is absolutely necessary that he should know—

1. How to set the rear sight.
2. How to sight or aim.
3. How to squeeze the trigger.
4. How to hold the rifle in all positions.

If he does not know these things it is worse than uselss for him to fire. He will not improve; the more he shoots the worse he will shoot, and it will become more difficult to teach him.

SIGHT ADJUSTMENT.

Men must be able to adjust their sights correctly and quickly. An error in adjustment so small that one can scarcely see it on the sight leaf is sufficient to cause a miss at an enemy at 500 yards and over.

Notice your rear sight. When the leaf is laid down the battle sight appears on top. This sight is set for 530 yards and is not adjustable. When the leaf is raised four sights come into view. The extreme range sight for 2,850 yards at the top of the leaf is seldom used. The open sight at the upper edge of the drift slide is adjustable from 1,400 to 2,750 yards. To set it the upper edge of the slide is made to correspond with the

range reading on the leaf, and the slide is then clamped with the slide screw. This sight also is seldom used. The open sight at the bottom of the triangular opening in the drift slide is adjustable from 100 to 2,450 yards. To set it the index line at the lower corners of the triangle is set opposite the range graduation on the leaf and the slide clamped. This and the peep site just below it are the sights most commonly used. To set the peep sight, the index lines on either side of the peep-hole are set opposite the range desired and the slide clamped.

Notice the scales for the various ranges on either side of the face of the leaf. The odd-numbered hundreds of yards are on the right and the even on the left. The line below the number is the index line for that range. Thus to set the sight for 500 yards the index line of the slide is brought in exact line with the line on the leaf below the figure 5 and the slide clamped. To set for 550 yards the index lines of the slide are set half way between the index lines on the leaf below the figure 5 on the right side and the figure 6 on the left side. Look at your sight carefully when setting it and take great pains to get it exact. An error in setting the width of one of the lines on the leaf will cause an error of about 8 inches in where your bullet will strike at 500 yards.

The wind gauge is adjusted by means of the windage screw at the right front end of the base of the sight. Each graduation on the wind-gauge scale is called a "point." For convenience in adjusting the line of each third point on the scale is longer than the others. If you turn the windage screw so that the movable base moves to the right, you are taking right windage, which will cause your rifle to shoot more to the right.

It is seldom that a rifle will shoot correctly to the point aimed at at a given range with the sights adjusted exactly to the scale graduations for that range. If your sight is not correctly adjusted for your shooting and you wish to move it slightly to make it correct, remember to move it in the direction you wish your shot to hit. If you wish to shoot higher raise your sight. If to the right, move the wind gauge to the right. Always move your sight the correct amount in accordance with the following table:

TABLE OF SIGHT CORRECTIONS.

Showing to what extent the point of impact is moved by a change of 25 yards in elevation or 1 point in windage.

Range.	Correction by a change in elevation of 25 yards.	Correction by a change in windage of 1 point.
Yards.	*Inches.*	*Inches.*
100	0.72	4
200	1.62	8
300	2.79	12
400	4.29	16
500	6.22	20
600	8.59	24
800	15.43	32
1,000	25.08	40

An easy rule to remember the windage correction by is: "A change of 1 point of wind changes the point of impact 4 inches for every 100 yards of range."

Copy this table and take it to the range with you.

Example of sight adjustment: Suppose you are firing at 500 yards. The first two or three shots show you that your shots are hitting about a foot below and a foot to the right of the center of the bull's-eye. From the above table you will see that if you will raise your sight 50 yards and move the wind gauge half a point to the left the rifle will be sighted so that if you aim correctly the bullets will hit well inside the bull's-eye.

AIMING.

Open sight: Always align your sights with the front sight squarely in the middle of the "U" or notch of the rear sight, and the top of the front sight even with the upper corners of the "U." (See fig. 1.) All the sights on the rifle except the peep sight are open sights.

Peep sight: Always center the tip of the front sight in the center of the peephole when aiming with this sight. (See fig. 2.)

Always aim below the bull's-eye. Never let your front sight appear to touch the bull's-eye in aiming. Try to see the same amount of white target between the top of the front sight and the bottom of the bull's-eye each time. The eye must be focused on the bull's-eye or mark and not on the front or rear sight.

Look at figures 1 and 2 until your eye retains the memory of them, then try to duplicate the picture every time you aim. Aim consistently, always the same. Never change your aim; change your sight adjustment if your shots are not hitting in the right place.

FIGURE 1.

BATTLE SIGHT.

The battle sight is the open sight seen when the leaf is laid flat. It is adjusted for a range of 530 yards. It is intended to be used in battle when you get nearer to the enemy than 600 yards. Always aim at the belt of a standing enemy, or just below him if he is kneeling, sitting, or lying. On the target range this sight is used for rapid fire. With it the rifle shoots about 2 feet high at ranges between 200 and 400 yards, so you must aim below the figure on the rapid-fire target. Find out in your instruction practice just how much you must aim below to hit the figure.

TRIGGER SQUEEZE.

Use the first joint of the fore finger to squeeze the trigger. It is the most sensitive and best controlled portion of the body. As you place the rifle to your shoulder squeeze the trigger so as to pull it back about one-eighth of an inch, thus taking up the safety portion, or slack, of the pull. Then contract the trigger finger gradually, slowly and steadily increasing the pressure on the trigger while the aim is being perfected. Continue the gradual increase of pressure so that when the aim has become exact the additional pressure required to release the point of the sear can be given almost insensibly and without causing any deflection of the rifle. Put absolutely all your mind and will power into holding the rifle steady and squeezing the trigger off without disturbing the aim. Practice squeezing the trigger in this way every time you have your rifle in your hand until you can surely and quickly do it without a suspicion of a jerk.

FIGURE 2.

By practice the soldier becomes familiar with the trigger squeeze of his rifle, and knowing this, he is able to judge at any time, within limits, what additional pressure is required for its discharge. By constant repetition of this exercise he should be able finally to squeeze the trigger to a certain point beyond which the slightest movement will release the sear. Having squeezed the trigger to this point, the aim is corrected, and, when true, the additional pressure is applied and the discharge follows and the bullet flies true to the mark.

FIRING POSITIONS.

When in ranks at close order the positions are those described in the Infantry Drill Regulations. When in extended order, or when firing alone, these positions may be modified somewhat to better suit the individual. The following remarks on the various positions are offered as suggestions whereby steady positions may be learned by the soldier.

Standing position: Face the target, then execute right half face. Plant the feet about 12 inches apart. As you raise the rifle to the shoulder lean very slightly backward just enough to preserve the perfect balance on both feet which the raising of the rifle has somewhat disturbed. Do not lean far back, and do not lean forward at all. If your body is out of balance it will be under strain and you will tremble. The right elbow should be at about the height of the shoulder. The left hand should grasp well around the stock and handguard in front of the rear sight, and the left elbow should be almost directly under the rifle. The right hand should do more than half the work of holding the rifle up and against the shoulder, the left hand only steadying and guiding the piece. Do not try to meet the recoil; let the whole body move back with it. Do not be afraid to press the jaw hard against the stock; this steadies the position, and the head goes back with the recoil and insures that your face is not hurt.

Kneeling position: Assume the position very much as described in the Infantry Drill Regulations. Sit on the right heel. The right knee should point directly to the right, that is, along the firing line. The point of the left elbow should rest over the left knee. There is a flat place under the elbow which fits a flat place on the knee and makes a solid rest. Lean the body well forward. This position is uncomfortable until practiced, when it quickly ceases to be uncomfortable.

Sitting position: Sit down half faced to the right, feet from 6 to 8 inches apart, knees bent, right knee slightly higher than the left, left leg pointed toward the target. Rest both elbows on the knees, hands grasping the piece the same as in the prone position. This is a very steady position, particularly if holes can be found or made in the ground for the heels.

Prone position and use of the gun sling: To adjust the sling for firing, unhook the straight strap of the sling and let it out as far as it will go. Adjust the loop so that, when stretched

along the bottom of the stock its rear end (bight) comes about opposite the comb of the stock. A small man needs a longer loop than a tall man. Lie down facing at an angle of about 60° to the right of the direction of the target. Spread the legs as wide apart as they will go with comfort. Thrust the left arm through between the rifle and the sling, and then back through the loop of the sling, securing the loop, by means of the keeper, around the upper left arm as high up as it will go. Pass the hand under and then over the sling from the left side, and grasp the stock and handguard just in rear of the lower band. Raise the right elbow off the ground, rolling slightly over on the left side. Place the butt to the shoulder and roll back into position, clamping the rifle hard and steady in the firing position. The rifle should rest deep down in the palm of the left hand with fingers almost around the handguard. Shift the left palm a little to the right or left until the rifle stands perfectly upright (no cant) without effort. The left elbow should rest on the ground directly under the rifle, and right elbow on the ground about 5 inches to the right of a point directly under the stock. In this position the loop of the sling, starting at the lower band, passes to the right of the left wrist, and thence around the left upper arm. The loop should be so tight that about 50 pounds tension is placed on it when the position is assumed. This position is uncomfortable until practiced, when it quickly ceases to be uncomfortable. It will be steadier if small holes can be found or dug in the ground for the elbows. In this position the sling binds the left forearm to the rifle and to the ground so that it forms a dead rest for the rifle, with a universal joint, the wrist, at its upper end. Also the rifle is so bound to the shoulder that the recoil is not felt at all. This is the steadiest of all firing positions.

The gun sling can also be used in this manner with advantage in the other positions.

CALLING THE SHOT.

It is evident that the sights should be so adjusted at each range that the rifle will hit where you aim. In order to determine that the sights are so adjusted it is necessary that you shall know each time just where you were aiming on the target at the instant your rifle was discharged. If you know this and your rifle hits this point your rifle is correctly sighted. If your

shot does not hit near this point, you should change your sight adjustment in accordance with the table of sight corrections on page 31.

No man can hold absolutely steady. The rifle trembles slightly, and the sights seem to wobble and move over the target. You try to squeeze off the last ounce of the trigger squeeze just as the sights move to the desired alignment under the bull's-eye. At this instant, just before the recoil blots out a view of the sights and target, you should catch with your eye a picture, as it were, of just where on the target your sights were aligned, and call to yourself or to the coach this point. This point is where your shot should strike if your sights are correctly adjusted, and if you have squeezed the trigger without disturbing your aim. Until a man can call his shots he is not a good shot, for he can never tell if his rifle is sighted right or not, or if a certain shot is a good one or only the result of luck.

COORDINATION.

Good marksmanship consists in learning thoroughly the details of—

Holding the rifle in the various positions.
Aiming.
Squeezing the trigger.
Calling the shot.
Adjusting the sights.

And, when these have been mastered in detail, then the coordination of them in the act of firing. This coordination consists in putting absolutely all of one's will power into an effort to hold the rifle steadily, especially in getting it to steady down when the aim is perfected; in getting the trigger squeezed off easily at the instant the rifle is steadiest and the aim perfected; in calling the shot at this instant; and, if the shot does not hit near the point called, then in adjusting the sights the correct amount so that the rifle will be sighted to hit where you aim.

ADVICE TO RIFLEMEN.

Before going to the range clean the rifle carefully, removing every trace of oil from the bore. This can best be done with a rag saturated with gasoline. Put a light coat of oil on the

bolt and cams. Blacken the front and rear sights, with smoke from a burning candle or camphor or with liquid sight black.

Look through the bore and see that there is no obstruction in it.

Keep the rifle off the ground; the stock may absorb dampness, the sights may be injured, or the muzzle filled with dirt.

Watch your hold carefully and be sure to know where the line of sight is at discharge. It is only in this way that the habit of calling shots, which is essential to good shooting, can be acquired.

Study the conditions, adjust the sling, and set the sight before going to the firing point.

Look at the sight adjustment before each shot and see that it has not changed.

If sure of your hold and if the hit is not as called, determine and make the FULL correction in elevation and windage to put the next shot in the bull's-eye.

Keep a written record of the weather conditions and the corresponding elevation and windage for each day's firing.

Less elevation will generally be required on hot days; on wet days; in a bright sunlight; with a 6 o'clock wind; or with a cold barrel.

More elevation will generally be required on cold days; on very dry days; with a 12 o'clock wind; with a hot barrel; in a dull or cloudy light.

The upper band should not be tight enough to bind the barrel.

Do not put a cartridge into the chamber until ready to fire. Do not place cartridges in the sun. They will get hot and shoot high.

Do not rub the eyes—especially the sighting eye.

In cold weather warm the trigger hand before shooting.

After shooting, clean the rifle carefully and then oil it to prevent rust.

Have a strong clean cloth that will not tear and jam, properly cut to size, for use in cleaning.

Always clean the rifle from the breech, using a brass cleaning rod when available. An injury to the rifling at the muzzle causes the piece to shoot very irregularly.

Regular physical exercise, taken systematically, will cause a marked improvement in shooting.

Frequent practice of the "Position and aiming drills" is of the greatest help in preparing for shooting on the range.

Rapid firing: Success in rapid firing depends upon catching a quick and accurate aim, holding the piece firmly and evenly, and in squeezing the trigger without a jerk.

In order to give as much time as possible for aiming accurately, the soldier must practice taking position, loading with the clip, and working the bolt so that no time will be lost in these operations. With constant practice all these movements may be made quickly and without false motions.

When the bolt handle is raised, it must be done with enough force to start the shell from the chamber; and when the bolt is pulled back, it must be with sufficient force to throw the empty shell well away from the chamber and far enough to engage the next cartridge.

In loading, use force enough to load each cartridge with one motion.

The aim must be caught quickly, and, once caught, must be held and the trigger squeezed steadily. Rapid firing, as far as holding, aim, and squeezing the trigger are concerned, should be done with all the precision of slow fire. The gain in time should be in getting ready to fire, loading, and working the bolt.

Firing with rests: In order that the shooting may be uniform the piece should always be rested at the same point.

TARGET PRACTICE COURSE.

GENERAL SCHEME.

The course in small-arms firing prescribed for the Organized Militia consists of—

(*a*) Sighting drills.
(*b*) Position and aiming drills.
(*c*) Deflection and elevation correction drills.
(*d*) Gallery practice.
(*e*) Qualification course, instruction practice.
(*f*) Qualification course, record practice.

The regulations governing these are found in Small Arms Firing Manual, 1913. There should be several copies of this manual in every company. The details as regards gallery practice and the qualification course (outdoor range firing) follow.

GALLERY PRACTICE.

The following course in gallery practice is prescribed:

TABLE I.

Range.	Targets.	Position.	Minimum number of shots.
Feet. 50	The iron gallery target issued by the Ordnance Department, or one similar thereto, or paper targets.	Prone	10
50	do	Sitting / Kneeling	[1] 10
50	do	Standing	10

[1] 5 sitting, 5 kneeling.

Where it is impracticable to use ranges of 50 feet, gallery practice may be conducted at a greater distance at targets whose dimensions and divisions have been proportionately increased. If a gallery range is not available, the recording rifle rod outfit or subtarget gun machine may be used to determine eligibility for range practice, under similar conditions, when specially authorized by the State authorities. Firing will be by scores of five consecutive shots. Except in case of accident, a score once begun will be completed.

No officer or enlisted man who has failed to qualify as first class or better in a previous season shall be advanced to range practice until he has attained at least 90 points out of a possible 150 in the gallery practice course by selecting his two best scores of five shots at each range.

KNOWN DISTANCE PRACTICE.

(OUTDOOR RANGE PRACTICE.)

The qualification course is divided into instruction practice and record practice. The prescribed course of instruction practice is as follows:

INSTRUCTION PRACTICE.

TABLE 2.

Range.	Kind of fire.	Time.	Shots.	Target.	Position.	Possible.
Yards.						
200	Slow fire.....	No limit....	10	A	5 sitting..... / 5 kneeling...	50
300	.....do.....	.....do.....	5	A	Prone.....	25
500	.....do.....	.....do.....	10	B	.....do.....	50

TABLE 3.—*Target D.*

(Battle sight only will be used with this target.)

Range.	Kind of fire.	Time.	Shots.	Target.	Position.	Possible.
Yards.						
200	Slow.....	No limit....	5	D	Kneeling....	25
200	Rapid.....	1 minute....	5	D	Kneeling from standing.	25
300	Slow.....	No limit.....	5	D	Prone.....	25
300	Rapid.....	1 minute....	5	D	Prone from standing.	25

Total, 225.

At each range a total of 60 per cent of the possible must be attained before advancement to the next range.

(*a*) The following grades of classification are obtained in instruction practice by selective scores of five consecutive scores each:

First-class men, 150 out of possible 225.

Second-class men, 130 out of possible 225.

Unqualified, below 130 and all who fail to complete the course or fail to fire.

(*b*) No individual shall be advanced to record practice until he has attained the grade of first-class man, except as provided in paragraph (*c*).

(*c*) Instruction practice will be optional with the State authorities for all who have qualified as marksmen or better in the season immediately preceding.

(*d*) After eligibility to fire record practice has been determined as in paragraphs (*a*) and (*b*), the record practice may

be preceded by further preliminary practice, in the discretion of the State authorities.

RECORD PRACTICE.

After completing the instruction practice, those who qualify as first-class men are eligible to fire record practice. The qualification course, record practice, is as follows:

TABLE 4.—*Slow fire.*

Range.	Time.	Shots.	Target.	Position.
Yards.				
300	No limit	10	A	Prone.
500	.....do	10	B	Do.
600	.....do	10 (2 s. s.)	B	Prone, sandbag rest.[1]

[1] In firing with sandbag rest, either rifle or back of hand must rest on sandbag.

TABLE 5.—*Target D, battle sight.*

Range.	Time.	Shots.	Target.	Position.
Yards.				
200	1½ minutes	10	D	Kneeling from standing.
300	2 minutes	10	D	Prone from standing.

Possible, 250.

This course may be fired three times in any target season, the individual's classification being determined by the best of his three trials, but this provision shall not be construed to permit the formation of a record based on scores selected from two or more trials; the basis of classification must be the result of one complete course in each case.

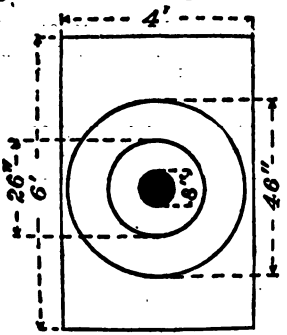
The following grades of qualification are obtained in record practice:

Expert rifleman, 210 points out of possible 250.
Sharpshooter, 190 points out of possible 250.
Marksman, 160 points out of possible 250.

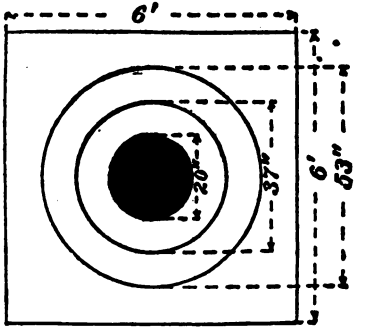
If an individual fires the record practice and fails to qualify as marksman or better, or fails to complete the course he is classified as a first-class man.

TARGETS.

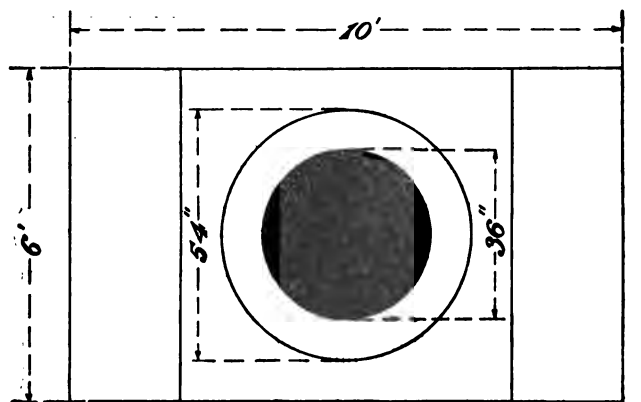
The accompanying plates show the details and size of the targets used in the qualification course for the Organized Militia.



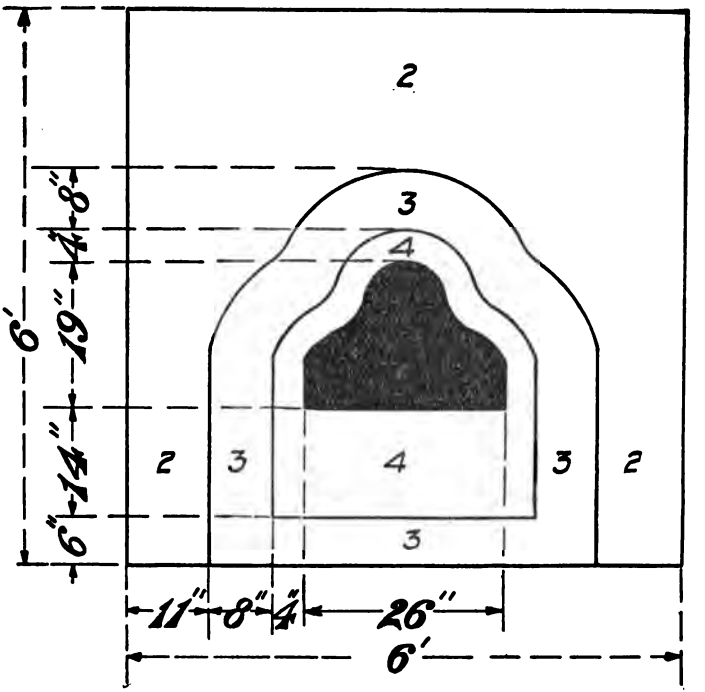
TARGET A.



TARGET B.



TARGET C


2
3
4
2
3
4
3
2
3
8"
4"
19"
14"
6"
6'
11"
8"
4"
26"
6'

EXTRACTS FROM INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS.

UNITED STATES ARMY, 1911.

DEFINITIONS.

Alignment: A straight line upon which several elements are formed, or are to be formed; or the dressing of several elements upon a straight line.

Base: The element on which a movement is regulated.

Battle sight: The position of the rear sight when the leaf is laid down.

Center: The middle point or element of a command.

Column: A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Deploy: To extend the front. In general to change from column to line, or from close order to extended order.

Depth: The space from head to rear of any formation, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

Distance: Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear. The distance between ranks is 40 inches in both line and column.

Element: A file, squad, platoon, company, or larger body, forming part of a still larger body.

File: Two men, the front-rank man and the corresponding man of the rear rank. The front-rank man is the file leader. A file which has no rear-rank man is a blank file. The term file applies also to a single man in a single-rank formation.

File closers: Such officers and noncommissioned officers of a company as are posted in rear of the line. For convenience, all men posted in the line of file closers.

Flank: The right or left of a command in line or in column; also the element on the right or left of the line.

Formation: Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Front: The space, in width, occupied by an element, either in line or in column. The front of a man is assumed to be 22 inches. Front also denotes the direction of the enemy.

Guide: An officer, noncommissioned officer, or private upon whom the command or elements thereof regulates its march.

Head: The leading element of a column.

Interval: Space between elements of the same line. The interval between men in ranks is 4 inches and is measured from elbow to elbow. Between companies, squads, etc., it is measured from the left elbow of the left man or guide of the group on the right, to the right elbow of the right man or guide of the group on the left.

Left: The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line: A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Order, close: The formation in which the units, in double rank, are arranged in line or in column with normal intervals and distances.

Order, extended: The formation in which the units are separated by intervals greater than in close order.

Pace: Thirty inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Point of rest: The point at which a formation begins. Specifically, the point toward which units are aligned in successive movements.

Rank: A line of men placed side by side.

Right: The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

PART I.—DRILL.

INTRODUCTION.

1. Success in battle is the ultimate object of all military training; success may be looked for only when the training is intelligent and thorough.

2. Commanding officers are accountable for the proper training of their respective organizations within the limits prescribed by regulations and orders.

The excellence of an organization is judged by its field efficiency. The field efficiency of an organization depends primarily upon its effectiveness as a whole. Thoroughness and uniformity in the training of the units of an organization are indispensable to the efficiency of the whole; it is by such means alone that the requisite teamwork may be developed.

3. Simple movements and elastic formations are essential to correct training for battle.

4. The Drill Regulations are furnished as a guide. They provide the principles for training and for increasing the probability of success in battle.

In the interpretation of the regulations, the spirit must be sought. Quibbling over the minutiæ of form is indicative of failure to grasp the spirit.

5. The principles of combat are considered in Part II of these regulations. They are treated in the various schools included in Part I only to the extent necessary to indicate the functions of the various commanders and the division of responsibility between them. The amplification necessary to a proper understanding of their application is to be sought in Part II.

6. The following important distinctions must be observed:

(*a*) Drills executed at attention and the ceremonies are **disciplinary exercises** designed to teach precise and soldierly movement, and to inculcate that prompt and subconscious obedience which is essential to proper military control. To this end smartness and precision should be exacted in the execution of every detail. Such drills should be frequent, but short.

(*b*) The purpose of extended order drill is to teach the mechanism of deployment, of the firings, and, in general, of the employment of troops in combat. Such drills are in the nature of disciplinary exercises and should be frequent, thorough, and exact in order to habituate men to the firm control of their leaders. Extended order drill is executed at ease. The company is the largest unit which executes extended order drill.

(*c*) Field exercises are for instruction in the duties incident to campaign. Assumed situations are employed. Each exercise should conclude with a discussion, on the ground, of the exercise and principles involved.

(*d*) The combat exercise, a form of field exercise of the company, battalion, and larger units, consists of the application of tactical principles to assumed situations, employing in the execution the appropriate formations and movements of close and extended order.

Combat exercises must simulate, as far as possible, the battle conditions assumed. In order to familiarize both officers and men with such conditions, companies and battalions will frequently be consolidated to provide war-strength organizations. Officers and noncommissioned officers not required to complete the full quota of the units participating are assigned as observers or umpires.

The firing line can rarely be controlled by the voice alone; thorough training to insure the proper use of prescribed signals is necessary.

The exercise should be followed by a brief drill at attention in order to restore smartness and control.

7. In field exercises the enemy is said to be imaginary when his position and force are merely assumed; outlined when his position and force are indicated by a few men; represented when a body of troop acts as such.

General Rules for Drills and Formations.

8. When the preparatory commands consists of more than one part its elements are arranged as follows:

(1) For movements to be executed successively by the subdivisions or elements of an organization: (*a*) Description of the movement; (*b*) how executed, or on what element executed.

(2) For movements to be executed simultaneously by the subdivisions of an organization: (*a*) The designation of the subdivisions; (*b*) the movement to be executed.

9. Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank, it being necessary to substitute the word "left" for "right," and the reverse, to have the explanation of the corresponding movement toward the other flank. The commands are given for the execution of the movements toward either flank. The substitute word of the command is placed within parentheses.

10. Any movement may be executed either from the halt or when marching, unless otherwise prescribed. If at a halt, the command for movements involving marching need not be prefaced by forward, as 1. **Column right** (left), 2. **MARCH.**

11. Any movement not specially excepted may be executed in double time.

If at a halt, or if marching in quick time, the command **double time** precedes the command of execution.

12. In successive movements executed in double time the leading or base unit marches in **quick time** when not otherwise prescribed; the other units march in **double time** to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit. If marching in double time, the command **double time** is omitted. The leading or base unit marches in **quick time**; the other units continue at double time to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

13. To hasten the execution of a movement begun in quick time, the command: 1. **Double time**, 2. **MARCH**, is given. The leading or base unit continues to march in quick time, or remains at halt if already halted; the other units complete the execution of the movement in double time and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

14. To stay the execution of a movement when marching, for the correction of errors, the command: 1. **In place**, 2. **HALT**, is given. All halt and stand fast, without changing the position of the pieces. To resume the movement the command: 1. **Resume**, 2. **MARCH**, is given.

15. To revoke a preparatory command, or, being at a halt, to begin anew a movement improperly begun, the command, **AS YOU WERE**, is given, at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

16. Unless otherwise announced, the guide of a company or subdivision of a company in line is right; of a battalion in line or line of subdivisions or of a deployed line, center; of a rank in column of squads, toward the side of the guide of the company.

To march with guide other than as prescribed above, or to change the guide: Guide (right, left, or center).

In successive formations into line, the guide is toward the point of rest; in platoons or larger subdivisions it is so announced.

The announcement of the guide, when given in connection with a movement, follows the command of execution for that movement. Exception: 1. As skirmishers, guide right (left or center), 2. MARCH.

17. The turn on the fixed pivot by subdivisions is used in all formations from line into column and the reverse.

The turn on the moving pivot is used by subdivisions of a column in executing changes of direction.

18. Partial changes of direction may be executed:

By interpolating in the preparatory command the word half, as Column half right (left), or Right (left) half turn. A change of direction of 45° is executed.

By the command: INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT). The guide, or guiding element, moves in the indicated direction and the remainder of the command conforms. This movement effects slight changes of direction.

19. The designations line of platoons, line of companies, line of battalions, etc., refer to the formations in which the platoons, companies, battalions, etc., each in column of squads, are in line.

20. Full distance in column of subdivisions is such that in forming line to the right or left the subdivisions will have their proper intervals.

In column of subdivisions the guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in rear preserve the trace, step, and distance.

21. In close order, all details, detachments, and other bodies of troops are habitually formed in double rank.

To insure uniformity of interval between files when falling in, and in alignments, each man places the palm of the left hand upon the hip, fingers pointing downward. In the first case the

hand is dropped by the side when the next man on the left has his interval; in the second case, at the command front.

22. The posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, special units (such as band or machine-gun company), etc., in the various formations of the company, battalion, or regiment, are shown in plates.

In all changes from one formation to another involving a change of post on the part of any of these, posts are promptly taken by the most convenient route as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement; officers and noncommissioned officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement ordered, take their new posts when such duties are completed.

As instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever their presence is necessary. As file closers it is their duty to rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

23. Except at ceremonies, the special units have no fixed places. They take places as directed; in the absence of directions, they conform as nearly as practicable to the plates, and in subsequent movements maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

24. General, field, and staff officers are habitually mounted. The staff of an officer forms in single rank 3 paces in rear of him, the right of the rank extending 1 pace to the right of a point directly in rear of him. Members of the staff are arranged in order from right to left as follows: General staff officers, adjutant, aids, other staff officers, arranged in each classification in order of rank, the senior on the right. The flag of the general officer and the orderlies are 3 paces in rear of the staff, the flag on the right. When necessary to reduce the front of the staff and orderlies, each line executes twos right or fours right, as explained in the Cavalry Drill Regulations, and follows the commander.

When not otherwise prescribed, staff officers draw and return saber with their chief.

25. In making the about, an officer, mounted, habitually turns to the left.

When the commander faces to give commands, the staff, flag, and orderlies do not change position.

26. When making or receiving official reports, all officers will salute, if covered; if uncovered, they stand at attention.

When under arms, the salute is made with the sword or saber if drawn, otherwise with the hand. A mounted officer dismounts before addressing a superior not mounted.

On meeting, all officers salute when covered; when uncovered, they exchange the courtesies observed between gentlemen.

Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation, to the representative of a common superior—as, for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.—the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge by saluting, if covered, or verbally, if uncovered, that he has received and understood the report.

27. For ceremonies, all mounted enlisted men of a regiment or smaller unit, except those belonging to the machine-gun organizations, are consolidated into a detachment; the senior present commands if no officer is in charge. The detachment is formed as a platoon or squad of cavalry in line or column of fours; noncommissioned staff officers are on the right or in the leading ranks.

28. For ceremonies, such of the noncommissioned staff officers as are dismounted are formed 5 paces in rear of the color, in order of rank from right to left. In column of squads they march as file closers.

29. Other than for ceremonies, noncommissioned staff officers and orderlies accompany their immediate chiefs unless otherwise directed. If mounted, the noncommissioned staff officers are ordinarily posted on the right or at the head of the orderlies.

30. In all formations and movements a noncommissioned officer commanding a platoon or company carries his piece as the men do, if he is so armed, and takes the same post as an officer in like situation. When the command is formed in line for ceremonies, a noncommissioned officer commanding a company takes post on the right of the right guide after the company has been aligned.

ORDERS, COMMANDS, AND SIGNALS.

31. Commands only are employed in drill at attention. Otherwise either a command, signal, or order is employed, as best suits the occasion, or one may be used in conjunction with another.

32. Signals should be freely used in instruction, in order that officers and men may readily know them. In making arm signals the saber, rifle, or headdress may be held in the hand.

33. Officers and men fix their attention at the first word of command, the first note of the bugle or whistle, or the first motion of the signal. A signal includes both the preparatory command and the command of execution; the movement commences as soon as the signal is understood, unless otherwise prescribed.

34. Except in movements executed at attention, commanders or leaders of subdivisions repeat orders, commands, or signals whenever such repetition is deemed necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

Officers, platoon leaders, guides, and musicians are equipped with whistles. Guides and musicians assist by repeating signals when necessary.

35. Prescribed signals are limited to such as are essential as a substitute for the voice under conditions which render the voice inadequate.

Before or during an engagement special signals may be agreed upon to facilitate the solution of such special difficulties as the particular situation is likely to develop, but it must be remembered that simplicity and certainty are indispensable qualities of a signal.

Orders.

36. In these regulations an order embraces instructions or directions given orally or in writing in terms suited to the particular occasion and not prescribed herein.

Orders are employed only when the commands prescribed herein do not sufficiently indicate the will of the commanders.

Orders are more fully described in paragraphs 378 to 383, inclusive.

Commands.

37. In these regulations a command is the will of the commander expressed in the phraseology prescribed herein.

38. There are two kinds of commands:

The preparatory command, such as *forward*, indicates the movement that is to be executed.

The command of execution, such as **MARCH**, **HALT**, or **ARMS**, causes the execution.

Preparatory commands are distinguished by italics, those of execution by **CAPITALS**.

Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the commands prescribed, they are to be given by the commander of the unit concerned.

The preparatory command should be given at such an interval of time before the command of execution as to admit of being properly understood; the command of execution should be given at the instant the movement is to commence.

The tone of command is animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men for whom it is intended.

Each preparatory command is enunciated distinctly, with a rising inflection at the end, and in such manner that the command of execution may be more energetic.

The command of execution is firm in tone and brief.

39. Majors and commanders of units larger than a battalion repeat such commands of their superiors as are to be executed by their units, facing their units for that purpose. The battalion is the largest unit that executes a movement at the command of execution of its commander.

40. When giving commands to troops it is usually best to face toward them.

Indifference in giving commands must be avoided, as it leads to laxity in execution. Commands should be given with spirit at all times.

Bugle Signals.

41. The authorized bugle signals are published in Part V of these regulations.

The following bugle signals may be used off the battle field, when not likely to convey information to the enemy:

Attention: Troops are brought to attention.

Attention to orders: Troops fix their attention.

Forward, march: Used also to execute quick time from double time.

Double time, march.

To the rear, march: In close order, execute squads right about.

Halt.

Assemble, march.

The following bugle signals may be used on the battle field:

Fix bayonets.

Charge.

Assemble, march.

These signals are used only when intended for the entire firing line; hence they can be authorized only by the commander of a unit (for example, a regiment or brigade) which occupies a distinct section of the battle field. Exception: **Fix bayonet.** (See par. 318.)

The following bugle signals are used in exceptional cases on the battle field. Their principal uses are in field exercises and practice firing.

Commence firing: Officers charged with fire direction and control open fire as soon as practicable. When given to a firing line, the signal is equivalent to fire at will.

Cease firing: All parts of the line execute cease firing at once.

These signals are not used by units smaller than a regiment, except when such unit is independent or detached from its regiment.

Whistle Signals.

42. Attention to orders. A short blast of the whistle. This signal is used on the march or in combat when necessary to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders or leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals.

When the firing line is firing, each squad leader suspends firing and fixes his attention at a short blast of his platoon

leader's whistle. The platoon leader's subsequent commands or signals are repeated and enforced by the squad leader. If a squad leader's attention is attracted by a whistle other than that of his platoon leader, or if there are no orders or commands to convey to his squad he resumes firing at once.

Suspend firing. A long blast of the whistle.

Arm Signals.

43. The following arm signals are prescribed. In making signals either arm may be used. Officers who receive signals on the firing line "repeat back" at once to prevent misunderstanding.

Forward, march. Carry the hand to the shoulder; straighten and hold the arm horizontally, thrusting it in direction of march.

This signal is also used to execute quick time from double time.

Halt. Carry the hand to the shoulder; thrust the hand upward and hold the arm vertically.

Double time, march. Carry the hand to the shoulder; rapidly thrust the hand upward the full extent of the arm several times.

Squads right, march. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal; carry it to a vertical position above the head and swing it several times between the vertical and horizontal positions.

Squads left, march. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal; carry it downward to the side and swing it several times between the downward and horizontal positions.

Squads right about, march (if in close order) or, **To the rear, march** (if in skirmish line). Extend the arm vertically above the head; carry it laterally downward to the side and swing it several times between the vertical and downward positions.

Change direction or **Column right (left), march.** The hand on the side toward which the change of direction is to be made is carried across the body to the opposite shoulder, forearm horizontal; then swing in a horizontal plane, arm extended, pointing in the new direction.

As skirmishers, march. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal.

As skirmishers, guide center, march. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; swing both simultaneously upward until vertical and return to the horizontal; repeat several times.

As skirmishers, guide right (left), march. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; hold the arm on the side of the guide steadily in the horizontal position; swing the other upward until vertical and return it to the horizontal; repeat several times.

Assemble, march. Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and describe horizontal circles.

Range, or **Change elevation.** To announce **range,** extend the arm toward the leaders or men for whom the signal is intended, fist closed; by keeping fist closed battle sight is indicated; by opening and closing the fist, expose thumb and fingers to a number equal to the hundreds of yards; to add 50 yards describe a short horizontal line with forefinger. **To change elevation,** indicate the **amount of increase** or **decrease** by fingers as above; point upward to indicate increase and downward to indicate decrease.

Suspend firing. Raise and hold the forearm steadily in a horizontal position in front of the forehead, palm of the hand to the front.

Cease firing. Raise the forearm as in **suspend firing** and swing it up and down several times in front of the face.

Platoon. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leader; describe small circles with the hand. (See par. 44.)

Squad. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leader; swing the hand up and down from the wrist. (See par. 44.)

Rush. Same as **double time.**

44. The signals **platoon** and **squad** are intended primarily for communication between the captain and his platoon leaders. The signal **platoon** or **squad** indicates that the platoon commander is to cause the signal which follows to be executed by platoon or squad.

Flag Signals.

45. The signal flags described below are carried by the company musicians in the field.

In a regiment in which it is impracticable to make the permanent battalion division alphabetically, the flags of a battalion

are as shown; flags are assigned to the companies alphabetically, within their respective battalions, in the order given below.

First battalion:
- Company A. Red field, white square.
- Company B. Red field, blue square.
- Company C. Red field, white diagonals.
- Company D. Red field, blue diagonals.

Second battalion:
- Company E. White field, red square.
- Company F. White field, blue square.
- Company G. White field, red diagonals.
- Company H. White field, blue diagonals.

Third battalion:
- Company I. Blue field, red square.
- Company K. Blue field, white square.
- Company L. Blue field, red diagonals.
- Company M. Blue field, white diagonals.

46. In addition to their use in visual signaling, these flags serve to mark the assembly point of the company when disorganized by combat, and to mark the location of the company in bivouac and elsewhere, when such use is desirable.

47. For communication between the firing line and the reserve or commander in rear, the subjoined signals (Signal Corps code) are prescribed. In transmission, their concealment from the enemy's view should be insured. In the absence of signal flags, the headdress or other substitute may be used.

Letter of alphabet.	If signaled from the rear to the firing line.	If signaled from the firing line to the rear.
a a a	Ammunition going forward	Ammunition required.
c c c	Charge (mandatory at all times)	Am about to charge if no instructions to contrary.
c f	Cease firing	
f	Commence firing	
s s s	Support going forward	Support needed.
g	Move forward	Preparing to move forward.
h h h	Halt	
k	Negative	Negative.
p	Affirmative	Affirmative.

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

48. The instructor explains briefly each movement, first executing it himself if practicable. He requires the recruits to take the proper positions unassisted and does not touch them for the purpose of correcting them, except when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping them too long at the same movement, although each should be understood before passing to another. He exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

49. In order that all may advance as rapidly as their abilities permit, the recruits are grouped according to proficiency as instruction progresses. Those who lack aptitude and quickness are separated from the others and placed under experienced drill masters.

INSTRUCTION WITHOUT ARMS.

50. For preliminary instruction a number of recruits, usually not exceeding three or four, are formed as a squad in single rank.

Position of the Soldier, or Attention.

51. Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

Feet turned out equally and forming an angle of about 45°.

Knees straight without stiffness.

Hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally.

Arms and hands hanging naturally, thumb along the seam of the trousers.

Head erect and squarely to the front, chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front.

Weight of the body resting equally upon the heels and balls of the feet.

The Rests.

52. Being at a halt, the commands are: **FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE**; and, 1. **Parade**, 2. **REST.**

At the command **fall out**, the men may leave the ranks, but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. They resume their former places, at attention, at the command **fall in.**

At the command **rest** each man keeps one foot in place, but is not required to preserve silence or immobility.

At the command **at ease** each man keeps one foot in place and is required to preserve silence but not immobility.

53. 1. **Parade**, 2. **REST.** Carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands, without constraint, in front of the center of the body, fingers joined, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by the thumb and forefinger of the right hand; preserve silence and steadiness of position.

54. To resume the attention: 1. **Squad**, 2. **ATTENTION.**

The men take the position of the soldier.

Eyes Right or Left.

55. 1. **Eyes**, 2. **RIGHT (LEFT)**, 3. **FRONT.**

At the command **right**, turn the head to the right oblique, eyes fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. At the command **front**, turn the head and eyes to the front.

Facings.

56. To the flank: 1. **Right (left)**, 2. **FACE.**

Raise slightly the left heel and right toe; face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot; place the left foot by the side of the right. Left face is executed on the left heel in the corresponding manner.

Right (left) half face is executed similarly, facing 45°.

"To face in marching" and advance, turn on the ball of either foot and step off with the other foot in the new line of

direction; to face in marching without gaining ground in the new direction, turn on the ball of either foot and mark time.

57. To the rear: 1. **About**, 2. **FACE**.

Carry the toe of the right foot about a half foot-length to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot; face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and right toe; place the right heel by the side of the left.

Salute with the Hand.

58. 1. **Hand**, 2. **SALUTE**.

Raise the right hand smartly till the tip of forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, forearm inclined at about 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time look toward the person saluted. **(TWO)** Drop the arm smartly by the side.

For rules governing salutes, see "Honors and Salutes," paragraphs 758–765.

STEPS AND MARCHINGS.

59. All steps and marchings executed from a halt, except right step, begin with the left foot.

60. The length of the full step in quick time is 30 inches, measured from heel to heel, and the cadence is at the rate of 120 steps per minute.

The length of the full step in double time is 36 inches; the cadence is at the rate of 180 steps per minute.

The instructor, when necessary, indicates the cadence of the step by calling **one, two, three four**, or **left, right**, the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

61. All steps and marchings and movements involving march are executed in **quick time** unless the squad be marching in **double time**, or **double time** be added to the command; in the latter case **double time** is added to the preparatory command. Example: 1. **Squad right, double time**, 2. **MARCH** (School of the Squad).

Quick Time.

62. Being at a halt, to march forward in quick time: 1. **Forward**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **forward**, shift the weight of the body to the right leg, left knee straight.

At the command **march**, move the left foot smartly straight forward 30 inches from the right, sole near the ground, and plant it without shock; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march. The arms swing naturally.

63. Being at a halt, or in march in quick time, to march in double time: 1. **Double time**, 2. **MARCH.**

If at a halt, at the first command shift the weight of the body to the right leg. At the command **march**, raise the forearms, fingers closed, to a horizontal position along the waist line; take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms.

If marching in quick time, at the command **march**, given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick time, and then step off in double time.

64. To resume the quick time: 1. **Quick time**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **march**, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time; resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

To Mark Time.

65. Being in march: 1. **Mark time**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **march**, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear and continue the cadence by alternately raising each foot about 2 inches and planting it on line with the other.

Being at a halt, at the command **march**, raise and plant the feet as described above.

The Half Step.

66. 1. **Half step**, 2. **MARCH.**

Take steps of 15 inches in quick time, 18 inches in double time.

67. **Forward, half step, halt,** and **mark time** may be executed one from the other in quick or double time.

To resume the full step from half step or mark time: 1. **Forward,** 2. **MARCH.**

Side Step.

68. Being at a halt or mark time: 1. **Right (left) step,** 2. **MARCH.**

Carry and plant the right foot 15 inches to the right; bring the left foot beside it and continue the movement in the cadence of quick time.

The side step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

If at order arms, the side step is executed at trail without command.

Back Step.

69. Being at a halt or mark time: 1. **Backward,** 2. **MARCH.**

Take steps of 15 inches straight to the rear.

The back step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

If at order arms, the back step is executed at trail without command.

To Halt.

70. To arrest the march in quick or double time: 1. **Squad,** 2. **HALT.**

At the command **halt,** given as either foot strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in marching; raise and place the first foot by the side of the other. If in double time, drop the hands by the sides.

To March by the Flank.

71. Being in march: 1. **By the right (left) flank,** 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **march,** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot.

To March to the Rear.

72. Being in march: 1. **To the rear**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **march**, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; turn to the right about on the balls of both feet and immediately step off with the left foot.

If marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four steps in place, keeping the cadence, and then step off with the left foot.

Change Step.

73. Being in march: 1. **Change step**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the command **march**, given as the right foot strikes the ground; advance and plant the left foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

The change on the right foot is similarly executed, the command **march** being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

MANUAL OF ARMS.

74. As soon as practicable the recruit is taught the use, nomenclature (Pl. I), and care of his rifle; when fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms; instruction without arms and that with arms alternate.

75. The following rules govern the carrying of the piece.

First. The piece is not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or the magazine except when specifically ordered. When so loaded, or supposed to be loaded, it is habitually carried locked; that is, with the **safety lock** turned to the "safe." At all other times it is carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled.

Second. Whenever troops are formed under arms, pieces are immediately inspected at the commands: 1. **Inspection**, 2. **ARMS**; 3. **Order (Right shoulder, port)**, 4. **ARMS.**

A similar inspection is made immediately before dismissal.

If cartridges are found in the chamber or magazine, they are removed and placed in the belt.

Third. The cut-off is kept turned "off" except when cartridges are actually used.

Fourth. The bayonet is not fixed except in bayonet exercise, on guard, or for combat.

Fifth. Fall in is executed with the piece at the order arms. Fall out, rest, and at ease are executed as without arms. On resuming attention the position of order arms is taken.

Sixth. If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the piece is brought to the right shoulder at the command march, the three motions corresponding with the first three steps. Movements may be executed at the trail by prefacing the preparatory command with the words at trail; as, 1. At trail, forward, 2. MARCH; the trail is taken at the command march.

When the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, taking interval or distance, and assemblings are executed from the order, raise the piece to the trail while in motion and resume the order on halting.

Seventh. The piece is brought to the order on halting. The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

Eighth. A disengaged hand in double time is held as when without arms.

76. The following rules govern the execution of the manual of arms:

First. In all positions of the left hand at the balance (center of gravity, bayonet unfixed) the thumb clasps the piece; the sling is included in the grasp of the hand.

Second. In all positions of the piece "diagonally across the body" the position of the piece, left arm and hand are the same as in port arms.

Third. In resuming the order from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with the butt of the piece about 3 inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the piece, fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward, all fingers of the right hand grasping the piece. To complete the order, lower the piece gently to the ground with the right hand, drop the left quickly by the side, and take the position of order arms.

Allowing the piece to drop through the right hand to the ground, or other similar abuse of the rifle to produce effect in executing the manual, is prohibited.

Fourth. The cadence of the motions is that of quick time; the recruits are first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their pieces. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

Fifth. The manual is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail; in this case the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands, two, three, four, that of the other motions.

To execute the movements in detail, the instructor first cautions: **By the numbers**; all movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions: **Without the numbers**; or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

Sixth. Whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to the previous position of the piece.

Under exceptional conditions of weather or fatigue the rifle may be carried in any manner directed.

77. Position of order arms standing: The butt rests evenly on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on a line with toe of, and touching, the right shoe, arms and hands hanging naturally, right hand holding the piece between the thumb and fingers.

78. Being at order arms: 1. **Present**, 2. **ARMS.**

With the right hand carry the piece in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. **(TWO)** Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

79. Being at order arms: 1. **Port**, 2. **ARMS.**

With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body, grasp it smartly with both hands; the right, palm down, at the small of the stock; the left, palm up, at the balance; barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the left shoulder; right forearm horizontal; left forearm resting against the body; the piece in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

80. Being at present arms: 1. **Port**, 2. **ARMS.**

Carry the piece diagonally across the body and take the position of port arms.

81. Being at port arms: 1. Present, 2. ARMS.

Carry the piece to a vertical position in front of the center of the body and take the position of present arms.

82. Being at present or port arms: 1. **Order, 2. ARMS.**

Let go with the right hand; lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand; regrasp it with the right hand just above the lower band; let go with the left hand, and take the next to the last position in coming to the order. **(TWO)** Complete the order.

83. Being at order arms: 1. **Right shoulder, 2. ARMS.**

With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body; carry the right hand quickly to the butt, embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. **(TWO)** Without changing the grasp of the right hand, place the piece on the right shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow near the side, the piece in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front; carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, tip of the forefinger touching the cocking piece, wrist straight and elbow down. **(THREE)** Drop the left hand by the side.

84. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. **Order, 2. ARMS.**

Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining the grasp of the butt. **(TWO), (THREE)** Execute order arms as described from port arms.

85. Being at port arms: 1. **Right shoulder, 2. ARMS.**

Change the right hand to the butt. **(TWO), (THREE)** As in right shoulder arms from order arms.

86. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. **Port, 2. ARMS.**

Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. **(TWO)** Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

87. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. **Present, 2. ARMS.**

Execute port arms. **(THREE)** Execute present arms.

88. Being at present arms: 1. **Right shoulder, 2. ARMS.**

Execute port arms. **(TWO), (THREE), (FOUR)** Execute right shoulder arms as from port arms.

89. Being at port arms: 1. **Left shoulder, 2. ARMS.**

Carry the piece with the right hand and place it on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoul-

der; at the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel between first and second fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (TWO) Drop the right hand by the side.

Being at left shoulder arms: 1. **Port**, 2. **ARMS**.

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (TWO) Carry the piece to the right with the right hand, regrasp it with the left, and take the position of port arms.

Left shoulder arms may be ordered directly from the order, right shoulder or present, or the reverse. At the command **arms** execute **port arms** and continue in cadence to the position ordered.

90. Being at order arms: 1. **Parade**, 2. **REST**.

Carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; carry the muzzle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the left; grasp the piece with the left hand just below the stacking swivel, and with the right hand below and against the left.

Being at parade rest: 1. **Squad**, 2. **ATTENTION**.

Resume the order, the left hand quitting the piece opposite the right hip.

91. Being at order arms: 1. **Trail**, 2. **ARMS**.

Raise the piece, right arm slightly bent, and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about 30° with the vertical.

When it can be done without danger or inconvenience to others, the piece may be grasped at the balance and the muzzle lowered until the piece is horizontal; a similar position in the left hand may be used.

92. Being at trail arms: 1. **Order**, 2. **ARMS**.

Lower the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

Rifle Salute.

93. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. **Rifle**, 2. **SALUTE**.

Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of hand down; thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger touching end of cocking piece; look toward the person saluted. (TWO) Drop left hand by the side; turn head and eyes to the front. (*C. I. D. R., No. 6, Dec. 13, 1913.*)

94. Being at order or trail arms: 1. **Rifle**, 2. **SALUTE**.

Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger

against piece near the muzzle; look toward the person saluted. (TWO) Drop the left hand by the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

For rules governing salutes, see "Honors."

The Bayonet.

95. Being at order arms: 1. **Fix**, 2. **BAYONET.**

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the bayonet with the right hand, back of hand toward the body; draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order.

If the bayonet is carried on the haversack: Draw the bayonet with the left hand and fix it in the most convenient manner.

96. Being at order arms: 1. **Unfix**, 2. **BAYONET.**

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, pressing the spring with the forefinger of the right hand; raise the bayonet until the handle is about 12 inches above the muzzle of the piece; drop the point to the left, back of the hand toward the body, and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body; regrasp the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack: Take the bayonet from the rifle with the left hand and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

If marching or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the piece returned to the original position.

Fix and unfix bayonet are executed with promptness and regularity but not in cadence.

97. **CHARGE BAYONET.** Whether executed at halt or in motion, the bayonet is held toward the opponent as in the position of guard in the Manual for Bayonet Exercise.

Exercises for instruction in bayonet combat are prescribed in the Manual for Bayonet Exercise.

The Inspection.

98. Being at order arms: 1. **Inspection**, 2. **ARMS.**

At the second command take the position of port arms. (TWO) Seize the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of

the right hand, turn the handle up, draw the bolt back, and glance at the chamber. Having found the chamber empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front.

99. Being at inspection arms: 1. **Order (Right shoulder, port)**, 2. **ARMS.**

At the preparatory command **push** the bolt forward, turn the handle down, pull the trigger, and resume port arms. At the command arms, complete the movement ordered.

To Dismiss the Squad.

100. Being at halt: 1. **Inspection**, 2. **ARMS**, 3. **Port**, 4. **ARMS**, 5. **DISMISSED.**

SCHOOL OF THE SQUAD.

101. Soldiers are grouped into squads for purposes of instruction, discipline, control, and order.

102. The squad proper consists of a corporal and seven privates.

The movements in the School of the Squad are designed to make the squad a fixed unit and to facilitate the control and movement of the company. If the number of men grouped is more than 3 and less than 12, they are formed as a squad of 4 files, the excess above 8 being posted as file closers. If the number grouped is greater than 11, 2 or more squads are formed and the group is termed a platoon.

For the instruction of recruits, these rules may be modified.

103. The corporal is the squad leader, and when absent is replaced by a designated private. If no private is designated, the senior in length of service acts as leader.

The corporal, when in ranks, is posted as the left man in the front rank of the squad.

When the corporal leaves the ranks to lead his squad, his rear rank man steps into the front rank, and the file remains blank until the corporal returns to his place in ranks, when his rear rank man steps back into the rear rank.

104. In battle officers and sergeants endeavor to preserve the integrity of squads; they designate new leaders to replace those disabled, organize new squads when necessary, and see that every man is placed in a squad.

Men are taught the necessity of remaining with the squad to which they belong and, in case it be broken up or they become separated therefrom, to attach themselves to the nearest squad and platoon leaders, whether these be of their own or of another organization.

105. The squad executes the **halt**, **rests**, **facings**, **steps**, and **marchings** and the **manual of arms** as explained in the School of the Soldier.

To Form the Squad.

106. To form the squad the instructor places himself 3 paces in front of where the center is to be and commands: **FALL IN.**

The men assemble at attention, pieces at the order, and are arranged by the corporal in double rank, as nearly as practicable in order of height from right to left, each man dropping his left hand as soon as the man on his left has his interval. The rear rank forms with distance of 40 inches.

The instructor then commands: **COUNT OFF.**

At this command all except the right file execute **eyes right,** and beginning on the right, the men in each rank count **one, two, three, four;** each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he counts.

Pieces are then inspected.

Alignments.

107. To align the squad, the base file or files having been established: 1. **Right (Left),** 2. **DRESS,** 3. **FRONT.**

At the command **dress** all men place the left hand upon the hip (whether dressing to the right or left); each man, except the base file, when on or near the new line executes **eyes right,** and, taking steps of 2 or 3 inches, places himself so that his right arm rests lightly against the arm of the man on his right, and so that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those of the men on his right; the rear rank men cover in file.

The instructor verifies the alignment of both ranks from the right flank and orders up or back such men as may be in rear, or in advance, of the line; only the men designated move.

At the command **front,** given when the ranks are aligned, each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by his side.

In the first drills the basis of the alignment is established on, or parallel to, the front of the squad; afterwards, in oblique directions.

Whenever the position of the base file or files necessitates a considerable movement by the squad, such movement will be executed by marching to the front or oblique, to the flank or backward, as the case may be, without other command, and at the trail.

108. To preserve the alignment when marching: **GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT).**

The men preserve their intervals from the side of the guide, yielding to pressure from that side and resisting pressure from the opposite direction; they recover intervals, if lost, by gradually opening out or closing in; they recover alignment by slightly lengthening or shortening the step; the rear-rank men cover their file leaders at 40 inches.

In double rank, the front-rank man on the right, or designated flank, conducts the march; when marching faced to the flank, the leading man of the front rank is the guide.

To Take Intervals and Distances.

109. Being in line at a halt: 1. **Take interval,** 2. **To the right (left),** 3. **MARCH,** 4. **Squad,** 5. **HALT.**

At the second command the rear-rank men march backward 4 steps and halt; at the command **march** all face to the right and the leading man of each rank steps off; the other men step off in succession, each following the preceding man at 4 paces, rear-rank men marching abreast of their file leaders.

At the command **halt,** given when all have their intervals, all halt and face to the front.

110. Being at intervals, to assemble the squad: 1. **Assemble, to the right (left),** 2. **MARCH.**

The front-rank man on the right stands fast, the rear-rank man on the right closes to 40 inches. The other men face to the right, close by the shortest line, and face to the front.

111. Being in line at a halt and having counted off: 1. **Take distance,** 2. **MARCH,** 3. **Squad,** 4. **HALT.**

At the command **march** No. 1 of the front rank moves straight to the front; Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the front rank and Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4 of the rear rank, in the order named, move straight to the front, each stepping off so as to follow the preceding man at 4 paces. The command **halt** is given when all have their distances.

In case more than one squad is in line, each squad executes the movement as above. The guide of each rank of numbers is right.

112. Being at distances, to assemble the squad: 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH.**

No. 1 of the front rank stands fast; the other numbers move forward to their proper places in line.

To Stack and Take Arms.

113. Being in line at a halt: **STACK ARMS.**

Each even number of the front rank grasps his piece with the left hand at the upper band and rests the butt between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the front and opposite the center of the interval on his right, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel; each even number of the rear rank then passes his piece, barrel to the rear, to his file leader, who grasps it between the bands with his right hand and throws the butt about 2 feet in advance of that of his own piece and opposite the right of the interval, the right hand slipping to the upper band, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel, which he engages with that of his own piece; each odd number of the front rank raises his piece with the right hand, carries it well forward, barrel to the front; the left hand, guiding the stacking swivel, engages the lower hook of the swivel of his own piece with the free hook of that of the even number of the rear rank; he then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the other two pieces and lowers the butt to the ground, to the right of and against the toe of his right shoe.

The stacks made, the loose pieces are laid on them by the even numbers of the front rank.

When each man has finished handling pieces he takes the position of the soldier.

114. Being in line behind the stacks: **TAKE ARMS.**

The loose pieces are returned by the even numbers of the front rank; each even number of the front rank grasps his own piece with the left hand, the piece of his rear-rank man with his right hand, grasping both between the bands; each odd number of the front rank grasps his piece in the same way with the right hand, disengages it by raising the butt from the ground and then, turning the piece to the right, detaches it from the stack; each even number of the front rank disengages and detaches his piece by turning it to the left, and then passes the piece of his rear-rank man to him, and all resume the order.

115. Should any squad have Nos. 2 and 3 blank files, No. 1 rear rank takes the place of No. 2 rear rank in making and breaking the stack; the stacks made or broken, he resumes his post.

Pieces not used in making the stack are termed **loose pieces.**

Pieces are never stacked with the bayonet fixed.

The Oblique March.

116. For the instruction of recruits, the squad being in column or correctly aligned, the instructor causes the squad to face half right or half left, points out to the men their relative positions, and explains that these are to be maintained in the oblique march.

117. 1. **Right (Left) oblique,** 2. **MARCH.**

Each man steps off in a direction 45° to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the guide (the man on the right front of the line or column), and so regulates his steps that the ranks remain parallel to their original front.

At the command **halt** the men halt faced to the front.

To resume the original direction: 1. **Forward,** 2. **MARCH.**

The men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front.

If at **half step** or **mark time** while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the commands: 1. **Oblique,** 2. **MARCH.**

To Turn on Moving Pivot.

118. Being in line: 1. **Right (Left) turn,** 2. **MARCH.**

The movement is executed by each rank successively and on the same ground. At the second command, the pivot man of the front rank faces to the right in marching and takes the half step; the other men of the rank oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, then execute a second right oblique and take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man. All glance toward the marching flank while at half step and take the full step without command as the last man arrives on the line.

Right (Left) half turn is executed in a similar manner. The pivot man makes a half change of direction to the right and the other men make quarter changes in obliquing.

To Turn on Fixed Pivot.

119. Being in line, to turn and march: 1. **Squad right (left),** 2. **MARCH.**

At the second command, the right flank man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time; the other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot, and mark time. In the rear rank the third man from the

right, followed in column by the second and first, moves straight to the front until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching and mark time; the other number of the rear rank moves straight to the front four paces and places himself abreast of the man on his right. Men on the new line glance toward the marching flank while marking time and, as the last man arrives on the line, both ranks execute **forward, march**, without command.

120. Being in line, to turn and halt: 1. **Squad right** (left), 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Squad**, 4. **HALT.**

The third command is given immediately after the second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

121. Being in line, to turn about and march: 1. **Squad right** (left) **about**, 2. **MARCH.**

At the second command, the front rank twice executes **squad right**, initiating the second **squad right** when the man on the marching flank has arrived abreast of the rank. In the rear rank the third man from the right, followed by the second and first in column, moves straight to the front until on the prolongation of the line to be occupied by the rear rank; changes direction to the right; moves in the new direction until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching, mark time, and glance toward the marching flank. The fourth man marches on the left of the third to his new position; as he arrives on the line, both ranks execute **forward, march**, without command.

122. Being in line, to turn about and halt: 1. **Squad right** (left) **about**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Squad**, 4. **HALT.**

The third command is given immediately after the second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

To Follow the Corporal.

123. Being assembled or deployed, to march the squad without unnecessary commands, the corporal places himself in front of it and commands **FOLLOW ME.**

If in line or skirmish line, No. 2 of the front rank follows in the trace of the corporal at about 3 paces; the other men conform to the movements of No. 2, guiding on him and maintaining their relative positions.

If in column, the head of the column follows the corporal.

To Deploy as Skirmishers.

124. Being in any formation, assembled: 1. **As skirmishers,** 2. **MARCH.**

The corporal places himself in front of the squad, if not already there. Moving at a run, the men place themselves abreast of the corporal at half-pace intervals, Nos. 1 and 2 on his right, Nos. 3 and 4 on his left, rear-rank men on the right of their file leaders, extra men on the left of No. 4; all then conform to the corporal's gait.

When the squad is acting alone, skirmish line is similarly formed on No. 2 of the front rank, who stands fast or continues the march, as the case may be; the corporal places himself in front of the squad when advancing and in rear when halted.

When deployed as skirmishers, the men march at ease, pieces at the trail unless otherwise ordered.

The corporal is the guide when in the line; otherwise No. 2 front rank is the guide.

125. The normal interval between skirmishers is one-half pace, resulting practically in one man per yard of front. The front of a squad thus deployed as skirmishers is about 10 paces.

To Increase or Diminish Intervals.

126. If assembled, and it is desired to deploy at greater than the normal interval; or if deployed, and it is desired to increase or decrease the interval: 1. **As skirmishers, (so many) paces,** 2. **MARCH.**

Intervals are taken at the indicated number of paces. If already deployed, the men move by the flank toward or away from the guide.

The Assembly.

127. Being deployed: 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH.**

The men move toward the corporal and form in their proper places.

If the corporal continues to advance, the men move in double time, form, and follow him.

The assembly while marching to the rear is not executed.

Kneeling and Lying Down.

128. If standing: **KNEEL.**

Half face to the right; carry the right toe about 1 foot to the left rear of the left heel; kneel on right knee, sitting as nearly as possible on the right heel; left forearm across left thigh; piece remains in position of order arms, right hand grasping it above the lower band.

129. If standing or kneeling: **LIE DOWN.**

Kneel, but with right knee against left heel; carry back the left foot and lie flat on the belly, inclining body about 35° to the right; piece horizontal, barrel up, muzzle off the ground and pointed to the front; elbows on the ground; left hand at the balance, right hand grasping the small of the stock opposite the neck. This is the position of order arms, lying down.

130. If kneeling or lying down: **RISE.**

If kneeling, stand up, faced to the front, on the ground marked by the left heel.

If lying down, raise body on both knees; stand up, faced to the front, on the ground marked by the knees.

131. If lying down: **KNEEL.**

Raise the body on both knees; take the position of kneel.

132. In double rank, the positions of kneeling and lying down are ordinarily used only for the better utilization of cover.

When deployed as skirmishers, a sitting position may be taken in lieu of the position kneeling.

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS.

133. The commands for loading and firing are the same whether standing, kneeling, or lying down. The firings are always executed at a halt.

When kneeling or lying down in double rank, the rear rank does not load, aim, or fire.

The instruction in firing will be preceded by a command for loading.

Loadings are executed in line and skirmish line only.

134. Pieces having been ordered loaded are kept loaded without command until the command unload, or inspection arms, fresh clips being inserted when the magazine is exhausted.

135. The aiming point or target is carefully pointed out. This may be done before or after announcing the sight setting. Both are indicated before giving the command for firing, but may be omitted when the target appears suddenly and is unmistakable; in such case battle sight is used if no sight setting is announced.

136. The target or aiming point having been designated and the sight setting announced, such designation or announcement need not be repeated until a change of either or both is necessary.

Troops are trained to continue their fire upon the aiming point or target designated, and at the sight setting announced, until a change is ordered.

137. If the men are not already in the position of load, that position is taken at the announcement of the sight setting; if the announcement is omitted, the position is taken at the first command for firing.

138. When deployed, the use of the sling as an aid to accurate firing is discretionary with each man.

To Load.

139. Being in line or skirmish line at halt: 1. **With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges,** 2. **LOAD.**

At the command **load** each front-rank man or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot to the right, about 1 foot, to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises, or lowers, the piece and drops it into the left hand at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and turns the cut-off up. With the right hand he turns and draws the bolt back, takes a loaded clip and inserts the end in the clip slots, places the thumb on the powder space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the piece and tips resting on the magazine floor plate; forces the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; without removing the clip, thrusts the bolt home, turning down the handle; turns the safety lock to the "safe" and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Each rear-rank man moves to the right front, takes a similar position opposite the interval to the right of his front-rank man, muzzle of the piece extending beyond the front rank, and loads.

A skirmish line may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of load.

If kneeling or sitting, the position of the piece is similar; if kneeling, the left forearm rests on the left thigh; if sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees. If lying down, the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground.

For reference, these positions (standing, kneeling, and lying down) are designated as that of load.

140. For instruction in loading: 1. **Simulate**, 2. **LOAD.**

Executed as above described, except that the cut-off remains "off" and the handling of cartridges is simulated.

The recruits are first taught to simulate loading and firing; after a few lessons dummy cartridges may be used. Later, blank cartridges may be used.

141. The rifle may be used as a single loader by turning the magazine "off." The magazine may be filled in whole or in part while "off" or "on" by pressing cartridges singly down and back until they are in the proper place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional.

To Unload.

142. UNLOAD.

Take the position of load, turn the safety lock up and move bolt alternately back and forward until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt slightly forward to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is open, pressing the follower down and back to engage it under the bolt and then thrusting the bolt home; the trigger is pulled. The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the belt and the piece is brought to the order.

To Set the Sight.

143. RANGE, ELEVEN HUNDRED (EIGHT-FIFTY, etc.), or BATTLE SIGHT.

The sight is set at the elevation indicated. The instructor explains and verifies sight settings.

To Fire by Volley.

144. 1. **READY**, 2. **AIM**, 3. **Squad**, 4. **FIRE.**

At the command **ready** turn the safety lock to the "ready"; at the command **aim** raise the piece with both hands and support the butt firmly against the hollow of the right shoulder, right thumb clasping the stock, barrel horizontal, left elbow well under the piece, right elbow as high as the shoulder; incline the head slightly forward and a little to the right, cheek against the stock, left eye closed, right eye looking through the notch of the rear sight so as to perceive the object aimed at, second joint of forefinger resting lightly against the front of the trigger and taking up the slack; top of front sight is carefully raised into, and held in, the line of sight.

Each rear-rank man aims through the interval to the right of his file leader and leans slightly forward to advance the muzzle of his piece beyond the front rank.

In aiming kneeling, the left elbow rests on the left knee, point of elbow in front of kneecap. In aiming sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees.

In aiming lying down, raise the piece with both hands; rest on both elbows and press the butt firmly against the right shoulder.

At the command **fire** press the finger against the trigger; fire without deranging the aim and without lowering or turning the piece; lower the piece to the position of **load** and load.

145. To continue the firing: 1. **AIM**, 2. **Squad**, 3. **FIRE.**

Each command is executed as previously explained. **Load** (from magazine) is executed by drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock at the "ready."

To Fire at Will.

146. FIRE AT WILL.

Each man, independently of the others, comes to the **ready**, aims carefully and deliberately at the aiming point or target, **fires**, **loads**, and continues the firing until ordered to **suspend** or **cease firing.**

147. To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress the instructor shouts: **FASTER (SLOWER).**

Men are trained to fire at the rate of about three shots per minute at effective ranges and five or six at close ranges, devoting the minimum of time to loading and the maximum to deliberate aiming. To illustrate the necessity for deliberation, and to habituate men to combat conditions, small and comparatively indistinct targets are designated.

To Fire by Clip.

148. **CLIP FIRE.**

Executed in the same manner as fire at will, except that each man, after having exhausted the cartridges then in the piece, suspends firing.

To Suspend Firing.

149. The instructor blows a long blast of the whistle and repeats same, if necessary, or commands: **SUSPEND FIRING.**

Firing stops; pieces are held, loaded, and locked, in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing, rear sights unchanged. The men continue to observe the target or aiming point, or the place at which the target disappeared, or at which it is expected to reappear.

This whistle signal may be used as a preliminary to cease firing.

To Cease Firing.

150. **CEASE FIRING.**

Firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load, the cut-off turned down if firing from magazine, the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell is ejected, the trigger is pulled, sights are laid down, and the piece is brought to the order.

Cease firing is used for long pauses to prepare for changes of position or to steady the men.

151. Commands for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the preparatory command for firing whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

THE USE OF COVER.

152. The recruit should be given careful instruction in the individual use of cover.

It should be impressed upon him that, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy; if advancing on an enemy, he must do so steadily and as rapidly as possible; he must conceal himself as much as possible while firing and while advancing.

153. To teach him to fire easily and effectively, at the same time concealing himself from the view of the enemy, he is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting, kneeling, and crouching positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, from depressions, gullies, ditches, doorways, or windows. He is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever possible, or, when this is not possible, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment.

When these details are understood, he is required to select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing.

154. The evil of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, should be explained. He should be taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover in advance before leaving his concealment.

It should be impressed upon him that a man running rapidly toward an enemy furnishes a poor target. He should be trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover and throwing himself behind it. He should also be practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling, or by lying on the left side, rifle grasped in the right hand, and pushing himself forward with the right leg.

155. He should be taught that, when fired on while acting independently, he should drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate his enemy.

156. The instruction of the recruit in the use of cover is continued in the combat exercises of the company, but he must then be taught that the proper advance of the platoon or company and the effectiveness of its fire is of greater importance than the question of cover for individuals. He should also be taught that he may not move about or shift his position in the firing line except the better to see the target.

OBSERVATION.

157. The ability to use his eyes accurately is of great importance to the soldier. The recruit should be trained in observing his surrounding from positions and when on the march.

He should be practiced in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in distinguishing between living beings; in counting distant groups of objects or beings; in recognizing colors and forms.

158. In the training of men in the mechanism of the firing line, they should be practiced in repeating to one another target and aiming point designations and in quickly locating and pointing out a designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops, both with the naked eye and with field glasses. Similarly, they should be trained in estimating distances.

MANUAL OF TENT PITCHING.

Shelter Tents.

[For Infantry Equipment, model of 1910.]*

792. Being in line or in column of platoons, the captain commands: **FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.**

The officers, first sergeant, and guides fall out; the cooks form a file on the flank of the company nearest the kitchen, the first sergeant and right guide fall in, forming the right file of the company; blank files are filled by the file closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining guide, or guides, and file closers form on a convenient flank.

Before forming column of platoons, preparatory to pitching tents, the company may be redivided into two or more platoons, regardless of the size of each.

793. The captain then causes the company to take intervals as described in the School of the Squad and commands: **PITCH TENTS.**

At the command **pitch tents**, each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot and lays his rifle on the ground, the butt of the rifle near the toe of the right foot, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and steps back into his place; each front-rank man then draws his bayonet and sticks it in the ground by the outside of the right heel.

Equipments are unslung, packs opened, shelter half and pins removed; each man then spreads his shelter half, small triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, the rear-rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together; the guy loops at both ends of the upper half are passed

* For method of pitching shelter tents with old model infantry equipment or old model shelter tent see page 91.

through the buttonholes provided in the upper half; the whipped end of the guy rope is then passed through both guy loops and secured, this at both ends of the tent. Each front-rank man inserts the muzzle of his rifle under the front end of the ridge and holds the rifle upright, sling to the front, heel of butt on the ground beside the bayonet. His rear-rank man pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of bayonets, stretching the tent taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the front guy rope and drives the pin at such a distance in front of the rifle as to hold the rope taut; both men go to the rear of the tent, each pins down a corner, stretching the sides and rear of the tent before securing; the rear-rank man then inserts an intrenching tool, or a bayonet in its scabbard, under the rear end of the ridge inside the tent, the front-rank man pegging down the end of the rear guy ropes; the rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear-rank man working on the right.

The front flaps of the tent are not fastened down, but thrown back on the tent.

As soon as the tent is pitched each man arranges his equipment and the contents of his pack in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy-rope pin.

To have a uniform slope when the tents are pitched, the guy ropes should all be of the same length.

794. When the pack is not carried the company is formed for shelter tents, intervals are taken, arms are laid aside or on the ground, the men are dismissed and proceed to the wagon, secure their packs, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. Double shelter tents may be pitched by first pitching one tent as heretofore described, then pitching a second tent against the opening of the first, using one rifle to support both tents, and passing the front guy ropes over and down the sides of the opposite tents. The front corner of one tent is not pegged down, but is thrown back to permit an opening into the tent.

Single Sleeping Bag.

796. Spread the poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; fold the blanket once across its short dimension and lay it on the poncho, folded side along the

right side of the poncho; tie the blanket together along the left side by means of the tapes provided; fold the left half of the poncho over the blanket and button it together along the side and bottom.

Double Sleeping Bag.

797. Spread one poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; spread the blankets on top of the poncho; tie the edges of the blankets together with the tapes provided; spread a second poncho on top of the blankets, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the right; button the two ponchos together along both sides and across the end.

To Strike Shelter Tents.

798. The men standing in front of their tents: **STRIKE TENTS.**

Equipments and rifles are removed from the tent; the tents are lowered, packs made up, and equipments slung, and the men stand at attention in the places originally occupied after taking intervals.

In shelter-tent camps in localities where suitable material is procurable tent poles may be improvised and used in lieu of the rifle and bayonet or intrenching tool as supports for the shelter tent.

Common and Wall Tents.

799. Four men pitch each tent.

Drive a pin to mark the center of the door; spread the tent on the ground to be occupied; place door loops over door pin; draw front corners taut, align, and peg them down; lace rear door, if necessary; draw rear corners taut in both directions and peg them down; the four corner guy pins are then driven in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent and about 2 paces beyond the corner pins; temporarily loosen the front door and the lee corner loops from the pins; insert uprights and ridge pole, inserting the pole pins in ridge pole and in eyelets of tent and fly; raise the tent; hold it in position; replace lee corner loops and secure corner and fly guy ropes; tighten same to

hold poles vertical; drive wall pins through the loops as they hang; drive intermediate guy pins, aligning them on corner pins already driven.

The Pyramidal Tent.

800. One squad pitches each tent.

The corporal drives a pin to mark the center of the door. The others of the squad unfold the tent and spread it out on the ground to be occupied, pole and tripod underneath. The corporal places the door loops over the door pin; one man goes to each corner of the tent; the two men in front draw the front corners taut, align the front of the tent with the company line of tents, and peg the corners down; the two men in rear draw rear corners taut in both directions and peg them down. The same four men drive the four corner guy pins in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent, about 2 paces beyond the corner pins. Meantime the other men of the squad having crept under the tent insert the tent pole spindle in top plate, the corporal placing the hood in position; the pole is raised and the lower end inserted in the tripod socket; the tripod is raised to its proper height. Under the supervision of the corporal the men inside the tent shift the tripod and the men outside the tent handle the corner guy lines in such manner as to erect the tent with the corner eaves directly above the corner pins. Each outside man, moving to the left, drives pins for the wall loops along one side of the tent and, returning, drives the intermediate guy pins; in both cases the pins are aligned on the corner pins. The inside men assist.

Conical Wall Tent.

801. Drive the door pin and center pin 8 feet 3 inches apart. Using the hood lines, with center pin as center, describe two concentric circles with radii 8 feet 3 inches and 11 feet 3 inches. In the outer circle drive two door guy pins 3 feet apart. At intervals of about 3 feet drive the other guy pins.

In other respects conical tents are erected practically as in the case of pyramidal tents.

To Strike Common, Wall, Pyramidal, and Conical Wall Tents.

802. STRIKE TENTS.

The men first remove all pins except those of the four corner guy ropes, or the four quadrant guy ropes in the case of the conical wall tent. The pins are neatly piled or placed in their receptacle.

One man holds each guy, and when the ground is clear the tent is lowered, folded, or rolled and tied, the poles or tripod and pole fastened together, and the remaining pins collected.

To Fold Tents.

803. For folding common, wall, hospital, and storage tents: Spread the tent flat on the ground, folded at the ridge so that bottoms of side walls are even, ends of tent forming triangles to the right and left; fold the triangular ends of the tent in toward the middle, making it rectangular in shape; fold the top over about 9 inches; fold the tent in two by carrying the top fold over clear to the foot; fold again in two from the top to the foot; throw all guys on tent except the second from each end; fold the ends in so as to cover about two-thirds of the second cloths; fold the left end over to meet the turned-in edge of the right end, then fold the right end over the top, completing the bundle; tie with the two exposed guys.

Method of Folding Pyramidal Tent.

The tent is thrown toward the rear and the back wall and roof canvas pulled out smooth. This may be most easily accomplished by leaving the rear-corner wall pins in the ground with the wall loops attached, one man at each rear-corner guy, and one holding the square iron in a perpendicular position and pulling the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This leaves the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the door side in the middle.

Now carry the right-front corner over and lay it on the left-rear corner. Pull all canvas smooth, throw guys toward square iron, and pull bottom edges even. Then take the right-front corner and return to the right, covering the right-rear corner.

This folds the right side of the tent on itself, with the crease in the middle and under the front side of tent.

Next carry the left-front corner to the right and back as described above; this when completed will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two sides walls folded inward, each on itself.

Place the hood in the square iron which has been folded downward toward the bottom of the tent, and continue to fold around the square iron as a core, pressing all folds down flat and smooth and parallel with the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas. Lay all exposed guys along the folded canvas except the two on the center width, which should be pulled out and away from bottom edge to their extreme length for tying. Now, beginning at one end, fold toward the center on the first seam (that joining the first and second widths) and fold again toward the center, so that the already folded canvas will come to within about 3 inches of the middle width. Then fold over to the opposite edge of middle width of canvas. Then begin folding from opposite end, folding the first width in half, then making a second fold to come within about 4 or 5 inches of that already folded; turn this fold entirely over that already folded. Take the exposed guys and draw them taut across each other, turn bundle over on the under guy, cross guys on top of bundle, drawing tight. Turn bundle over on the crossed guys and tie lengthwise.

When properly tied and pressed together this will make a package 11 by 23 by 34 inches, requiring about 8,855 cubic inches to store or pack.

Stencil the organization designation on the lower half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, December 2, 1911.

Paragraphs 747, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, and 798, Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911, apply only to troops equipped with the Infantry Equipment, model 1910. For troops equipped under General Orders, No. 23, War Department, 1906, and orders amendatory thereof, the alternative paragraphs published herewith will govern.

By order of the Secretary of War:

LEONARD WOOD,
Major General, Chief of Staff.

747. If the inspection is to include an examination of the blanket rolls the captain, before dismissing the company and after inspecting the file closers, directs the lieutenants to remain in place, closes ranks, stacks arms, dresses the company back to four paces from the stacks, takes intervals, and commands: 1. Unsling, 2. **PACKS**, 3. Open, 4. **PACKS**.

At the second command each man unslings his roll and places it on the ground at his feet, rounded end to the front, square end of shelter half to the right.

At the fourth command the rolls are untied, laid perpendicular to the front, with the triangular end of the shelter half to the front, opened, and unrolled to the left; each man prepares the contents of his roll for inspection and resumes the attention.

The captain then returns saber, passes along the ranks and file closers as before, inspects the rolls, returns to the right, draws saber and commands: 1. Close, 2. **PACKS**.

At the second command each man, with his shelter half smoothly spread on the ground with buttons up and triangular end to the front, folds his blanket once across its length and places it upon the shelter half, fold toward the bottom, edge one-half inch from the square end, the same amount of canvas uncovered at the top and bottom. He then places the parts of the pole on the side of the blanket next the square end of shelter half, near and parallel to the fold, end of pole about 6 inches from the edge of the blanket; nests the pins similarly near the opposite edge of the blanket and distributes the other articles carried in the roll; folds the triangular end and then the exposed portion of the bottom of the shelter half over the blanket.

The two men in each file roll and fasten first the roll of the front and then of the rear rank man. The file closers work similarly two and two, or with the front rank man of a blank file. Each pair stands on the folded side, rolls the blanket roll closely and buckles the straps, passing the end of the strap through both keeper and buckle, back over the buckle and under the keeper. With the roll so lying on the ground that the edge of the shelter half can just be seen when looking vertically downward one end is bent upward and over to meet the other, a clove hitch is taken with the guy rope first around the end to which it is attached and then around the other end, adjusting the length of rope between hitches to suit the wearer.

As soon as a file completes its two rolls each man places his roll in the position it was in after being unslung and stands at attention.

All the rolls being completed, the captain commands: 1. **Sling,** 2. **PACKS.**

At the second command the rolls are slung, the end containing the pole to the rear.

The company is assembled, takes arms, and the captain completes the inspection as before.

792. Being in line or in column of platoons, the captain commands: **FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.**

The officers, first sergeant, and guides fall out; the cooks form a file on the flank of the company nearest the kitchen, the first sergeant and right guide fall in, forming the right file of the company; blank files are filled by the file closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining guide or guides, and file closers form on a convenient flank. Before forming column of platoons, preparatory to pitching tents, the company may be redivided into two or more platoons, regardless of the size of each.

793. The captain then causes the company to take intervals as described in the School of the Squad, and commands: **PITCH TENTS.**

At the command **pitch tents,** each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot and lays his rifle on the ground, the butt of the rifle near the toe of the right foot, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and steps back into his place; each front rank man then draws his bayonet and sticks it in the ground by the outside of the right heel. All unsling and open the blanket rolls and take out the shelter half, poles, and pins.

Each then spreads his shelter half, triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, rear rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together. Each front rank man joins his pole, inserts the top in the eyes of the halves, and holds the pole upright beside the pin placed in the ground; his rear rank man, using the pins in front, pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of pins, stretching the canvas taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the rope and drives the pin at such distance in front of the pole as to hold the rope taut. Both then go to the rear of the tent; the rear rank man adjusts the pole and the front rank man drives the pins. The rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear rank man working on the right.

As soon as the tent is pitched each man arranges the contents of the blanket roll in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy rope pin.

The guy ropes, to have a uniform slope when the shelter tents are pitched, should all be of the same length.

794. When the blanket roll is not carried, arms are stacked and intervals taken as described above; the position of the front pole is marked with a bayonet and equipments are laid aside. The men then proceed to the wagon, secure their rolls, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. To pitch double shelter tent, the captain gives the same commands as before, except **Take half interval** is given instead of **Take interval.** In taking interval each man follows the preceding man at 2 paces. The captain then commands: **PITCH DOUBLE TENTS.**

The first sergeant places himself on the right of the right guide and with him pitches a single shelter tent.

Only the odd numbers of the front rank mark the line with the tent pin.

The tent is formed by buttoning together the square ends of two single tents. Two complete tents, except one pole, are used. Two guy ropes are used at each end, the guy pins being placed in front of the corner pins.

The tents are pitched by numbers 1 and 2, front and rear rank; and by numbers 3 and 4, front and rear rank; the men falling in on the left are numbered, counting off if necessary.

All the men spread their shelter halves on the ground the tent is to occupy. Those of the front rank are placed with the triangular ends to the front. All four halves are then buttoned

together, first the ridges and then the square ends. The front corners of the tent are pinned by the front rank men, the odd number holding the poles, the even number driving the pins. The rear rank men similarly pin the rear corners.

While the odd numbers steady the poles, each even number of the front rank takes his pole and enters the tent, where, assisted by the even number of the rear rank, he adjusts the pole to the center eyes of the shelter halves in the following order: (1) The lower half of the front tent; (2) the lower half of the rear tent; (3) the upper half of the front tent; (4) the upper half of the rear tent. The guy ropes are then adjusted.

The tents having been pitched, the triangular ends are turned back, contents of the rolls arranged, and the men stand at attention, each opposite his own shelter half and facing out from the tent.

796. Omitted.

797. Omitted.

798. Omitted.

MANUAL OF THE BAYONET.

UNITED STATES ARMY.

---

1. The infantry soldier relies mainly on fire action to disable the enemy, but he should know that personal combat is often necessary to obtain success. Therefore, he must be instructed in the use of the rifle and bayonet in hand-to-hand encounters.

2. The object of this instruction is to teach the soldier how to make effective use of the rifle and bayonet in personal combat; to make him quick and proficient in handling his rifle; to give him an accurate eye and a steady hand; and to give him confidence in the bayonet in offense and defense. When skill in these exercises has been acquired, the rifle will still remain a most formidable weapon at close quarters should the bayonet be lost or disabled.

3. Efficiency of organizations in bayonet fighting will be judged by the skill shown by individuals in personal combat. For this purpose pairs or groups of opponents, selected at random from among recruits and trained soldiers, should engage in assaults, using the fencing equipment provided for the purpose.

4. Officers and specially selected and thoroughly instructed noncommissioned officers will act as instructors.

5. Instruction in bayonet combat should begin as soon as the soldier is familiar with the handling of his rifle and will progress, as far as practicable, in the order followed in the text.

6. Instruction is ordinarily given on even ground; but practice should also be had on uneven ground, especially in the attack and defense of intrenchments.

7. These exercises will not be used as a calesthenic drill.

8. The principles of the commands are the same as those given in paragraphs 9, 15, and 38, Infantry Drill Regulations. Intervals and distances will be taken as in paragraphs 109 and 111,

Infantry Drill Regulations, except that, in formations for bayonet exercises, the men should be at least four paces apart in every direction.

9. Before requiring soldiers to take a position or execute a movement for the first time, the instructor executes the same for the purpose of illustration, after which he requires the soldiers to execute the movement individually. Movements prescribed in this manual will not be executed in cadence as the attempt to do so results in incomplete execution and lack of vigor. Each movement will be executed correctly as quickly as possible by every man. As soon as the movements are executed accurately, the commands are given rapidly, as expertness with the bayonet depends chiefly upon quickness of motion.

10. The exercises will be interrupted at first by short and frequent rests. The rests will be less frequent as proficiency is attained. Fatigue and exhaustion will be specially guarded against, as they prevent proper interest being taken in the exercises and delay the progress of the instruction. Rests will be given from the position of order arms in the manner prescribed in Infantry Drill Regulations.

THE BAYONET.

Nomenclature and Description.

11. The bayonet is a cutting and thrusting weapon consisting of three principal parts, viz, the *blade*, *guard*, and *grip*.

12. The blade has the following parts: Edge, false edge, back, grooves, point, and tang. The length of the blade from guard to point is 16 inches, the edge 14.5 inches, and the false edge 5.6 inches. Length of the rifle, bayonet fixed, is 59.4 inches. The weight of the bayonet is 1 pound; weight of rifle without bayonet is 8.69 pounds. The center of gravity of the rifle, with bayonet fixed, is just in front of the rear sight.

I. INSTRUCTION WITHOUT THE RIFLE.

13. The instructor explains the importance of good footwork and impresses on the men the fact that quickness of foot and suppleness of body are as important for attack and defense as is the ability to parry and deliver a strong point or cut.

14. All foot movements should be made from the position of guard. As far as practicable, they will be made on the balls of the feet to insure quickness and agility. No hard and fast rule can be laid down as to the length of the various foot movements; this depends entirely on the situations occurring in combat.

15. The men having taken intervals or distances, the instructor commands:

1. **Bayonet exercise,** 2. **GUARD.**

At the command **guard,** half face to the right, carry back and place the right foot about once and a half its length to the rear and about 3 inches to the right, the feet forming with each other an angle of about 60°, weight of the body balanced equally on the balls of the feet, knees slightly bent, palms of hands on hips, fingers to the front, thumbs to the rear, head erect, head and eyes straight to the front.

16. To resume the attention, 1. **Squad,** 2. **ATTENTION.** The men take the position of the soldier and fix their attention.

17. ADVANCE. Advance the left foot quickly about once its length, follow immediately with the right foot the same distance.

18. RETIRE. Move the right foot quickly to the rear about once its length, follow immediately with the left foot the same distance.

19. 1. **Front,** 2. **PASS.** Place the right foot quickly about once its length in front of the left, advance the left foot to its proper position in front of the right.

20. 1. **Rear,** 2. **PASS.** Place the left foot quickly about once its length in rear of the right, retire the right foot to its proper position in rear of the left.

The passes are used to get quickly within striking distance or to withdraw quickly therefrom.

21. 1. **Right,** 2. **STEP.** Step to the right with the right foot about once its length and place the left foot in its proper relative position.

22. 1. **Left,** 2. **STEP.** Step to the left with the left foot about once its length and place the right foot in its proper relative position.

These steps are used to circle around an enemy, to secure a more favorable line of attack, or to avoid the opponent's attack. Better ground or more favorable light may be gained in this

way. In bayonet fencing and in actual combat the foot first moved in stepping to the right or left is the one which at the moment bears the least weight.

II. INSTRUCTION WITH THE RIFLE.

23. The commands for and the execution of the foot movements are the same as already given for movements without the rifle.

24. The men having taken intervals or distances, the instructor commands:

1. Bayonet exercise, 2. GUARD.

At the second command take the position of guard (see par. 15); at the same time throw the rifle smartly to the front, grasp the rifle with the left hand just below the lower band, fingers between the stock and gun sling, barrel turned slightly to the left, the right hand grasping the small of the stock about 6 inches in front of the right hip, elbows free from the body, bayonet point at the height of the chin.

25. 1. Order, 2. ARMS.

Bring the right foot up to the left and the rifle to the position of order arms, at the same time resuming the position of attention.

26. During the preliminary instruction, attacks and defenses will be executed from guard until proficiency is attained, after which they may be executed from any position in which the rifle is held.

Attacks.

27. 1. THRUST.

Thrust the rifle quickly forward to the full length of the left arm, turning the barrel to the left, and direct the point of the bayonet at the point to be attacked, butt covering the right forearm. At the same time straighten the right leg vigorously and throw the weight of the body forward and on the left leg, the ball of the right foot always on the ground. Guard is resumed immediately without command.

The force of the thrust is delivered principally with the right arm, the left being used to direct the bayonet. The points at which the attack should be directed are, in order of their importance, stomach, chest, head, neck, and limbs.

28. 1. LUNGE.

Executed in the same manner as the thrust, except that the left foot is carried forward about twice its length. The left

heel must always be in rear of the left knee. Guard is resumed immediately without command. Guard may also be resumed by

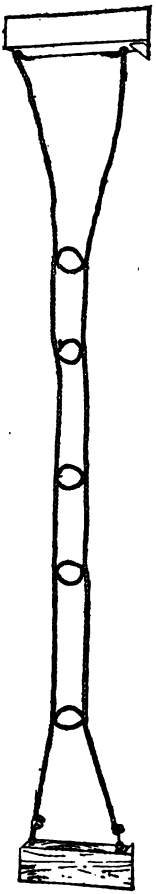
PAR. 27.

advancing the right foot if, for any reason, it is desired to hold the ground gained in lunging. In the latter case the preparatory command forward will be given. Each method should be practiced.

PAR. 24.

29. 1. Butt, 2. STRIKE.

Straighten right arm and right leg vigorously and swing butt of rifle against point of attack, pivoting the rifle in the left hand at about the height of



PAR. 33.

length plaited closely together into a cable between 6 and 12 inches in diameter. Old rope is preferable. Bags weighted and stuffed with hay, straw, shavings, etc., are also suitable.

Defenses.

37. In the preliminary drills in the defenses the position of guard is resumed, by command, after each parry. When the men have become proficient the instructor will cause them to resume the position of guard instantly without command after the execution of each parry.

38. 1. Parry, 2. RIGHT.

Keeping the right hand in the guard position, move the rifle sharply to the right with the left arm, so that the bayonet point is about 6 inches to the right.

39. 1. Parry, 2. LEFT.

Move the rifle sharp- to the left front with both hands so as to cover the point attacked.

PAR. 36.

40. 1. Parry, 2. HIGH.

Raise the rifle with both hands high enough to clear the line of vision, barrel downward, point of the bayonet to the left front.

When necessary to raise the rifle well above the head, it may be supported between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand.

PAR. 40.

PAR. 41.

This position will be necessary against attacks from higher elevations, such as men mounted or on top of parapets.

41. 1. Low parry, 2. RIGHT (LEFT).

Carry the point of the bayonet down until it is at the height of the knee, moving the point of the bayonet sufficiently to the

right (left) to keep the opponent's attacks clear of the point threatened.

These parries are rarely used, as an attack below the waist leaves the head and body exposed.

PAR. 41.

PAR. 44.

42. Parries must not be too wide or sweeping, but sharp, short motions, finished with a jerk or quick catch. The hands should, as far as possible, be kept in the line of attack. Parries against butt strike are made by quickly moving the guard so as to cover the point attacked.

43. To provide against attack from the right, left, or rear the soldier will change front as quickly as possible in the most convenient manner; for example: 1. **To the left rear,** 2. **Parry,** 3. **HIGH;** 1. **To the right,** 2. **Parry,** 3. **RIGHT,** etc.

These movements constitute a change of front in which the position of guard is resumed at the completion of the movement.

In changing front for the purpose of attack or defense, if there is danger of wounding a comrade, the rifle should first be brought to a vertical position.

III. INSTRUCTION WITHOUT THE BAYONET.

44. 1. **Club rifle,** 2. **SWING.**

Being at order arms, at the preparatory command quickly raise and turn the rifle, regrasping it with both hands between the rear sight and muzzle, barrel down, thumbs around the stock and toward the butt; at the same time raise the rifle above the shoulder farthest from the opponent, butt elevated and to the rear, elbows slightly bent and knees straight. Each individual takes such position of the feet, shoulders, and hands as best accords with his natural dexterity. **SWING.** Tighten the grasp of the hands and swing the rifle to the front and downward, directing it at the head of the opponent, and immediately return to the position of club rifle by completing the swing of the rifle downward and to the rear. Repeat by the command, **SWING.**

PAR. 44.

The rifle should be swung with sufficient force to break through any guard or parry that may be interposed.

Being at club rifle, order arms is resumed by command.

The use of this attack against dummies or in fencing is prohibited.

45. The position of club rifle may be taken from any position of the rifle prescribed in the Manual of Arms. It will not be taken in personal combat unless the emergency is such as to preclude the use of the bayonet.

IV. COMBINED MOVEMENTS.

46. The purpose of combined movements is to develop more vigorous attacks and more effective defenses than are obtained by the single movements; to develop skill in passing from attack to defense and the reverse. Every movement to the front should be accompanied by an attack, which is increased in effectiveness by the forward movement of the body. Every movement to the rear should ordinarily be accompanied by a parry and should always be followed by an attack. Movements to the right or left may be accompanied by attacks or defenses.

47. Not more than three movements will be used in any combination. The instructor should first indicate the number of movements that are to be combined as two movements or three movements. The execution is determined by one command of execution, and the position of guard is taken upon the completion of the last movement only.

Examples.

Front pass and LUNGE.
Right step and THRUST.
Left step and low parry RIGHT.
Rear pass, parry left and LUNGE.
Lunge and cut RIGHT.
Parry right and parry HIGH.
Butt strike and cut DOWN.
Thrust and parry HIGH.
Parry high and LUNGE.
Advance, thrust and cut RIGHT.

Right step, parry left and cut Down.
To the left, butt strike and cut DOWN.
To the right rear, cut down and butt STRIKE.

48. Attacks against dummies will be practiced. The approach will be made against the dummies both in quick time and double time.

V. PRACTICAL BAYONET COMBAT.

49. The principles of practical bayonet combat should be taught as far as possible during the progress of instruction in bayonet exercises.

50. The soldier must be continually impressed with the extreme importance of the offensive due to its moral effect. Should an attack fail, it should be followed immediately by another attack before the opponent has an opportunity to assume the offensive. Keep the opponent on the defensive. If, due to circumstances, it is necessary to take the defensive, constantly watch for an opportunity to assume the offensive and take immediate advantage of it.

51. Observe the ground with a view to obtaining the best footing. Time for this will generally be too limited to permit more than a single hasty glance.

52. In personal combat watch the opponent's eyes if they can be plainly seen, and do not fix the eyes on his weapon nor upon the point of your attack. If his eyes can not be plainly seen, as in night attacks, watch the movements of his weapon and of his body.

53. Keep the body well covered and deliver attacks vigorously. The point of the bayonet should always be kept as nearly as possible in the line of attack. The less the rifle is moved upward, downward, to the right, or to the left, the better prepared the soldier is for attack or defense.

54. Constantly watch for a chance to attack the opponent's left hand. His position of guard will not differ materially from that described in paragraph 24. If his bayonet is without a cutting edge, he will be at a great disadvantage.

55. The butt is used for close and sudden attacks. It is particularly useful in riot duty. From the position of port arms a sentry can strike a severe blow with the butt of the rifle.

56. Against a man on foot, armed with a sword, be careful that the muzzle of the rifle is not grasped. All the swordsman's

energies will be directed toward getting past the bayonet. Attack him with short, stabbing thrusts, and keep him beyond striking distance of his weapon.

57. The adversary may attempt a greater extension in the thrust and lunge by quitting the grasp of his piece with the left hand and advancing the right as far as possible. When this is done, a sharp parry may cause him to lose control of his rifle, leaving him exposed to a counter attack, which should follow promptly.

58. Against odds a small number of men can fight to best advantage by grouping themselves so as to prevent their being attacked from behind.

59. In fighting a mounted man armed with a saber every effort must be made to get on his near or left side, because here his reach is much shorter and his parries much weaker. If not possible to disable such an enemy, attack his horse and then renew the attack on the horseman.

60. In receiving night attacks the assailant's movements can be best observed from the kneeling or prone position, as his approach generally brings him against the sky line. When he arrives within attacking distance rise quickly and lunge well forward at the middle of his body.

VI. FENCING EXERCISES.

61. Fencing exercises in two lines consist of combinations of thrusts, parries, and foot movements executed at command or at will, the opponent replying with suitable parries and returns.

62. The instructor will inspect the entire fencing equipment before the exercise begins and assure himself that everything is in such condition as will prevent accidents.

63. The men equip themselves and form in two lines at the order, facing each other, with intervals of about 4 paces between files and a distance of about 2 paces between lines. One line is designated as number 1; the other, number 2. Also as attack and defense.

64. The opponents being at the order facing each other, the instructor commands: **SALUTE.**

Each man, with eyes on his opponent, carries the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm horizontal, forefinger

touching the bayonet. (Two.) Drop the arm smartly by the side.

This salute is the fencing salute.

All fencing exercises and all fencing at will between individuals will begin and terminate with the formal courtesy of the fencing salute.

65. After the fencing salute has been rendered the instructor commands: 1. Fencing exercise, 2. GUARD.

At the command guard each man comes to the position of guard, heretofore defined, bayonets crossed, each man's bayonet bearing lightly to the right against the corresponding portion of the opponent's bayonet. This position is known as the engage or engage right.

66. Being at the engage right: ENGAGE LEFT.

The attack drops the point of his bayonet quickly until clear of his opponent's rifle and describes a semicircle with it upward and to the right; bayonets are crossed similarly as in the engaged position, each man's bayonet bearing lightly to the left against the corresponding portion of the opponent's bayonet.

67. Being at engage left: ENGAGE RIGHT.

The attack quickly drops the point of his bayonet until clear of his opponent's rifle and describes a semicircle with it upward and to the left and engages.

68. Being engaged: ENGAGE LEFT AND RIGHT.

The attack engages left and then immediately engages right.

69. Being engaged left: ENGAGE RIGHT AND LEFT.

The attack engages right and then immediately engages left.

70. 1. Number one, ENGAGE RIGHT (LEFT); 2. Number two, COUNTER.

Number one executes the movement ordered, as above; number two quickly drops the point of his bayonet and circles it upward to the original position.

71. In all fencing while maintaining the pressure in the engage, a certain freedom of motion of the rifle is allowable, consisting of the play, or up-and-down motion, of one bayonet against the other. This is necessary to prevent the opponent from divining the intended attack. It also prevents his using the point of contact as a pivot for his assaults. In changing from one engage to the other the movement is controlled by the left hand, the right remaining stationary.

72. After some exercise in engage, engage left, and counter, exercises will be given in the assaults.

Assaults.

73. The part of the body to be attacked will be designated by name, as head, neck, chest, stomach, legs. No attacks will be made below the knees. The commands are given and the movements for each line are first explained thoroughly by the instructor; the execution begins at the command **assault**. Number one executes the attack, and number two parries; conversely, at command, number two attacks and number one parries.

74. For convenience in instruction assaults are divided into **simple attacks, counter attacks, attacks on the rifle, and feints.**

Simple Attacks.

75. Success in these attacks depends on quickness of movement. There are three simple attacks—the **straight**, the **disengagement**, and the **counter disengagement**. They are not preceded by a feint.

76. In the **straight** the bayonet is directed straight at an opening from the engaged position. Contact with the opponent's rifle may or may not be abandoned while making it. If the opening be high or low, contact with the rifle will usually be abandoned on commencing the attack. If the opening be near his guard, the light pressure used in the engage may be continued in the attack.

Example: Being at the **engage right**, 1. **Number one, at neck** (head, chest, right leg, etc.), **thrust**; 2. **Number two, parry right**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

77. In the **disengagement** contact with the opponent's rifle is abandoned and the point of the bayonet is circled under or over his bayonet or rifle and directed into the opening attacked. This attack is delivered by one continuous spiral movement of the bayonet from the moment contact is abandoned.

Example: Being at the **engage right**, 1. **Number one, at stomach** (left chest, left leg, etc.), **thrust**; 2. **Number two, parry left** (etc.); 3. **ASSAULT.**

78. In the **counter disengagement** a swift attack is made into the opening disclosed while the opponent is attempting to change the engagement of his rifle. It is delivered by one continuous spiral movement of the bayonet into the opening.

Example: Being at the engage right, 1. **Number two, engage left**; 2. **Number one**, at chest, thrust; 3. **Number two, parry left**; 4. **ASSAULT.**

Number two initiates the movement, number one thrusts as soon as the opening is made, and number two then attempts to parry.

79. A **counter attack** or **return** is one made instantly after or in continuation of a parry. The parry should be as narrow as possible. This makes it more difficult for the opponent to recover and counter parry. The counter attack should also be made at or just before the full extension of the opponent's attack, as when it is so made a simple extension of the arms will generally be sufficient to reach the opponent's body.

Example: Being at engage, 1. **Number two**, at chest, **lunge**; 2. **Number one, parry right**, and at stomach (chest, head, etc.) thrust; 3. **ASSAULT.**

Attacks on the Rifle

80. These movements are made for the purpose of forcing or disclosing an opening into which an attack can be made. They are the **press**, the **beat**, and the **twist**.

81. In the **press** the attack quickly presses against the opponent's bayonet or rifle with his own and continues the pressure as the attack is delivered.

Example: Being at the engage, 1. **Number one, press**, and at chest, thrust; 2. **Number two, parry right**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

82. The attack by **disengagement** is particularly effective following the press.

Example: Being at the engage, 1. **Number one, press**, and at stomach, thrust; 2. **Number two, low parry left**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

83. The **beat** is an attack in which a sharp blow is struck against the opponent's rifle for the purpose of forcing him to expose an opening into which an attack immediately follows. It is used when there is but slight opposition or no contact of rifles.

Example: Being at the engage, 1. **Number one, beat**, and at stomach (chest, etc.), thrust; 2. **Number two, parry left**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

84. In the **twist** the rifle is crossed over the opponent's rifle or bayonet and his bayonet forced downward with a circular

motion and a straight attack made into the opening. It requires superior strength on the part of the attack.

Example: Being at the engage, 1. **Number one, twist,** and at stomach, **thrust**; 2. **Number two, low parry left**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

Feints.

85. Feints are movements which threaten or simulate attacks and are made with a view to inducing an opening or parry that exposes the desired point of attack. They are either single or double, according to the number of such movements made by the attack.

86. In order that the attack may be changed quickly, as little force as possible is put into a feint.

Example: Being at the engage, 1, **Number one, feint** head **thrust**; at stomach, lunge; 2. **Number two, parry right and low parry right**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

Number one executes the feint and then the attack. Number two executes both parries.

87. In double feints first one part of the body and then another is threatened and a third attacked.

Example: Being at the engage, 1. **Number one, feint straight thrust** at chest; **disengagement** at chest; at stomach, **lunge**; 2. **Number two, parry right, parry left,** and **low parry left**; 3. **ASSAULT.**

88. An opening may be offered or procured by opposition, as in the press or beat.

89. In fencing exercises every feint should at first be parried. When the defense is able to judge or divine the character of the attack the feint is not necessarily parried, but may be nullified by a counter feint.

90. A **counter feint** is a feint following the opponent's feint or following a parry of his attack and generally occurs in combined movements.

COMBINED MOVEMENTS.

91. When the men have become thoroughly familiar with the various foot movements, parries, guards, attacks, feints, etc., the instructor combines several of them and gives the commands in quick succession, increasing the rapidity and number of move-

ments as the men become more skillful. Opponents will be changed frequently.

1. Example: Being at the engage, 1. Number one, by disengagement at chest, thrust; 2. Number two, parry left, right step (left foot first), and lunge; 3. ASSAULT.

2. Example: being at engage left, 1. Number one, press and lunge; 2. Number two, parry right, left step, and thrust; 3. ASSAULT.

3. Example: Being at the engage, 1. Number one, by disengagement at chest, thrust; 2. Number two, parry left, front pass, and at head butt strike; 3. Number one, right step; 4. ASSAULT.

92. Examples 1 and 2 are typical of movements known as cross counters, and example No. 3 of movements known as close counters.

93. A chancery is an attack by means of which the opponent is disarmed, which causes him to lose control of his rifle, or which disables his weapon.

94. When the different combinations are executed with sufficient skill the instructor will devise series of movements to be memorized and executed at the command assault. The accuracy and celerity of the movements will be carefully watched by the instructor, with a view to the correction of faulty execution.

95. It is not intended to restrict the number of movements, but to leave to the discretion of company commanders and the ingenuity of instructors the selection of such other exercises as accord with the object of the drill.

VII. FENCING AT WILL.

96. As satisfactory progress is made the instructor will proceed to the exercises at will, by which is meant assaults between two men, each endeavoring to hit the other and to avoid being hit himself. Fencing at will should not be allowed to degenerate into random attacks and defenses.

97. The instructor can supervise but one pair of combatants at a time. Frequent changes should be made so that the men may learn different methods of attack and defense from each other.

98. The contest should begin with simple, careful movements, with a view to forming a correct opinion of the adversary;

afterwards everything will depend on coolness, rapid and correct execution of the movements, and quick perception of the adversary's intentions.

99. Continual retreat from the adversary's attack and frequent dodging to escape attacks should be avoided. The offensive should be continually encouraged.

100. In fencing at will, when no commands are given, opponents facing each other at the position of order arms, salute. They then immediately and simultaneously assume the position of guard rifles engaged. Neither man may take the position of guard before his opponent has completed his salute. The choice of position is decided before the salute.

101. The opponents being about two paces apart and the fencing salute having been rendered, the instructor commands 1. At will, 2. ASSAULT, after which either party has the right to attack. To interrupt the contest the instructor will command HALT, at which the combatants will immediately come to the order. To terminate the contest the instructor will command, 1. Halt, 2. SALUTE, at which the combatants will immediately come to the order, salute, and remove their masks.

102. When men have acquired confidence in fencing at will, one opponent should be required to advance upon the other in quick time at charge bayonet, from a distance not to exceed 10 yards, and deliver an attack. As soon as a hit is made by either opponent the instructor commands, HALT, and the assault terminates. Opponents alternate in assaulting. The assailant is likewise required to advance at double time from a distance not exceeding 20 yards and at a run from a distance not exceeding 30 yards.

103. The instructor will closely observe the contest and decide doubtful points. He will at once stop the contest upon the slightest indication of temper. After conclusion of the combat he will comment on the action of both parties, point out errors and deficiencies and explain how they may be avoided in the future.

104. As additional instruction, the men may be permitted to wield the rifle left handed, that is on the left side of the body, left hand at the small of the stock. Many men will be able to use this method to advantage. It is also of value in case the left hand is wounded.

105. After men have fenced in pairs, practice should be given in fencing between groups, equally and unequally divided. When practicable, intrenchments will be used in fencing of this character.

In group fencing it will be necessary to have a sufficient number of umpires to decide hits. An individual receiving a hit is

PAR. 104.

withdrawn at once from the bout, which is decided in favor of the group having the numerical superiority at the end. The fencing salute is not required in group fencing.

Rules for Fencing at Will.

106. 1. Hits on the legs below the knees will not be counted. No hit counts unless, in the opinion of the instructor, it has sufficient force to disable.

2. Upon receiving a hit, call out "hit."

3. After receiving a fair hit a counter attack is not permitted. A position of engage is taken.

4. A second or third hit in a combined attack will be counted only when the first hit was not called.

5. When it is necessary to stop the contest—for example, because of breaking of weapons or displacement of means of protection—take the position of the order.

6. When it is necessary to suspend the assault for any cause, it will not be resumed until the adversary is ready and in condition to defend himself.

7. Attacks directed at the crotch are prohibited in fencing.

8. Stepping out of bounds, when established, counts as a hit.

Suggestions for Fencing at Will.

107. When engaging in an assault, first study the adversary's position and proceed by false attacks, executed with speed, to discover, if possible, his instinctive parries. In order to draw the adversary out and induce him to expose that part of the body at which the attack is to be made, it is advisable to simulate an attack by a feint and then make the real attack.

108. Return attacks should be frequently practiced, as they are difficult to parry, and the opponent is within easier reach and more exposed. The return can be made a continuation of the parry, as there is no previous warning of its delivery, although it should always be expected. Returns are made without lunging if the adversary can be reached by thrusts or cuts.

109. Endeavor to overcome the tendency to make a return without knowing where it will hit. Making returns blindly is a bad habit and leads to instinctive returns—that is, habitual returns with certain attacks from certain parries—a fault which the skilled opponent will soon discover.

110. Do not draw the rifle back preparatory to thrusting and lunging.

111. The purpose of fencing at will is to teach the soldier as many forms of simple, effective attacks and defenses as possible. Complicated and intricate movements should not be attempted.

Hints for Instructors.

112. The influence of the instructor is great. He must be master of his weapon, not only to show the various movements,

but also to lead in the exercises at will. He should stimulate the zeal of the men and arouse pleasure in the work. Officers should qualify themselves as instructors by fencing with each other.

113. The character of each man, his bodily conformation, and his degree of skill must always be taken into account. When the instructor is demonstrating the combinations, feints, returns, and parries the rapidity of his attack should be regulated by the skill of the pupil and no more force than is necessary should be used. If the pupil exposes himself too much in the feints and parries the instructor will, by an attack, convince him of his error; but if these returns be too swiftly or too strongly made the pupil will become overcautious and the precision of his attack will be impaired. The object is to teach the pupil, not to give exhibitions of superior skill.

114. Occasionally the instructor should leave himself uncovered and fail to parry, in order to teach the pupil to take quick advantage of such opportunities.

SUGGESTIONS.

In the Organized Militia, instruction in bayonet exercise and bayonet fencing should be conducted with a view to teaching the aggressive use of the bayonet. Unless troops are so thoroughly trained with the bayonet that they believe that with it they are superior to their opponents it will be difficult or impossible to develop that morale which is necessary for a successful assault. Men should be impressed with the importance of acting always on the offensive in bayonet combat; of pushing their attack with all their might. Troops which are successful in their first few bayonet encounters will seldom thereafter be called upon to use the bayonet—their opponents will not await the assault.

EXTRACTS FROM MANUAL OF INTERIOR GUARD DUTY.

UNITED STATES ARMY, 1914.

[The numbers refer to paragraphs in the Manual.]

INTRODUCTION.

1. Guards may be divided into four classes: Exterior guards, interior guards, military police, and provost guards.

2. Exterior guards are used only in time of war. They belong to the domain of tactics and are treated of in the Field Service Regulations and in the drill regulations of the different arms of the service.

The purpose of exterior guards is to prevent surprise, to delay attack, and otherwise to provide for the security of the main body.

On the march they take the form of advance guards, rear guards, and flank guards. At a halt they consist of outposts.

3. Interior guards are used in camp or garrison to preserve order, protect property, and to enforce police regulations. In time of war such sentinels of an interior guard as may be necessary are placed close in or about a camp, and normally there is an exterior guard further out consisting of outposts. In time of peace the interior guard is the only guard in a camp or garrison.

4. Military police differ somewhat from either of these classes. (See Field Service Regulations.) They are used in time of war to guard prisoners, to arrest stragglers and deserters, and to maintain order and enforce police regulations in the rear of armies, along lines of communication, and in the vicinity of large camps.

5. Provost guards are used in the absence of military police, generally in conjunction with the civil authorities at or near large posts or encampments, to preserve order among soldiers beyond the interior guard.

INTERIOR GUARDS.

Classification.

6. The various elements of an interior guard classified according to their particular purposes and the manner in which they perform their duties are as follows:

(*a*) The main guard.

(*b*) Special guards: Stable guards, park guards, prisoner guards, herd guards, train guards, boat guards, watchmen, etc.

Details and Rosters.

7. At every military post, and in every regiment or separate command in the field, an interior guard will be detailed and duly mounted.

It will consist of such number of officers and enlisted men as the commanding officer may deem necessary, and will be commanded by the senior officer or noncommissioned officer therewith, under the supervision of the officer of the day or other officer detailed by the commanding officer.

8. The system of sentinels on fixed posts is of value in discipline and training because of the direct individual responsibility which is imposed and required to be discharged in a definite and precise manner. While the desirability of this type of duty is recognized, it should only be put in practice to an extent sufficient to insure thorough instruction in this method of performing guard duty and should not be the routine method of its performance. The usual guard duty will be performed by watchmen, patrols, or such method as, in the opinion of the commanding officer, may best secure results under the particular local conditions.

9. At posts where there are less than three companies the main guard and special guards may all be furnished by one company or by details from each company. It is directed that

whenever possible such guards shall be furnished by a single company, for the reason that if guard details are taken from each organization at a post of two companies, troops, or batters it will result in both being so reduced as to seriously interfere with drill and instruction, whereas if details are taken from only one, the other is available for instruction at full strength.

Where there are three or more companies the main guard will, if practicable, be furnished by a single company, and, as far as practicable, the same organization will supply all details for that day for special guard, overseer, and fatigue duty. In this case the officer of the day and the officers of the guard, if there are any, will, if practicable, be from the company furnishing the guard.

10. At a post or camp where the headquarters of more than one regiment are stationed, or in the case of a small brigade in the field, if but one guard be necessary for the whole command, the details will be made from the headquarters of the command.

If formal guard mounting is to be held, the adjutant, sergeant major, and band to attend guard mounting will be designated by the commanding officer.

11. When a single organization furnishes the guard, a roster of organizations will be kept by the sergeant major under the supervision of the adjutant. (See Appendix B.)

12. When the guard is detailed from several organizations, rosters will be kept by the adjutant; of officers of the day and officers of the guard by name; by the sergeant major under the supervision of the adjutant; of sergeants, corporals, musicians, and privates of the guard by number per organizaion; and by first sergeants, of sergeants, corporals, musicians, and privates by name. (See Appendix A.)

13. When organizations furnish their own stable, or stable and park guards, credit will be given each for the number of enlisted men so furnished as though they had been detailed for main guard.

14. Special guards, other than stable or park guards, will be credited the same as for main guard, credited with fatigue duty, carried on special duty, or credited as the commanding officer may direct. (Pars. 6, 221, 247, and 300.)

15. Captains will supervise the keeping of company rosters and see that all duties performed are duly credited. (See pars. 355–364, A. R., for rules governing rosters, and Form 342, A. G. O., for instructions as to how rosters should be kept.)

16. There will be an officer of the day with each guard, unless in the opinion of the commanding officer the guard is so small that his services are not needed. In this case an officer will be detailed to supervise the command and instruction of the guard for such period as the commanding officer may direct.

17. When more than one guard is required for a command, a field officer of the day will be detailed, who will receive his orders from the brigade or division commander, as the latter may direct. When necessary captains may be placed on the roster for field officer of the day.

18. The detail of officers of the guard will be limited to the necessities of the service and efficient instruction; inexperienced officers may be detailed as supernumerary officers of the guard for purposes of instruction.

19. Officers serving in staff departments are, in the discretion of the commanding officer, exempt from guard duty.

20. Guard details will, if practicable, be posted or published the day preceding the beginning of the tour, and officers notified personally by a written order at the same time.

21. The strength of guards and the number of consecutive days for which an organization furnishes the guard will be so regulated as to insure privates of the main guard an interval of not less than five days between tours.

When this is not otherwise practicable, extra and special duty men will be detailed for night guard duty, still performing their daily duties. When so detailed a roster will be kept by the adjutant showing the duty performed by them.

22. The members of main guards and stable and park guards will habitually be relieved every 24 hours. The length of the tour of enlisted men detailed as special guards, other than stable or park guards, will be so regulated as to permit of these men being held accountable for a strict performance of their duty.

23. Should the officer of the day be notified that men are required to fill vacancies in the guard, he will cause them to be supplied from the organization to which the guard belongs. If none are available in that organization, the adjutant will be

notified and will cause them to be supplied from the organization that is next for guard. (Par. 63.)

24. The adjutant will have posted on the bulletin board at his office all data needed by company commanders in making details from their companies.

At first sergeant's call, first sergeants will go to headquarters and take from the bulletin board all data necessary for making the details required from their companies; these details will be made from their company rosters.

25. In order to give ample notice, first sergeants will, when practicable, publish at retreat and post on the company bulletin board all details made from the company for duties to be performed.

26. Where rosters are required to be kept by this manual, all details will be made by roster.

Commander of the Guard.

41. The commander of the guard is responsible for the instruction and discipline of the guard. He will see that all of its members are correctly instructed in their orders and duties and that they understand and properly perform them. He will visit each relief at least once while it is on post, and at least one of these visits will be made between 12 o'clock midnight and daylight.

42. He receives and obeys the orders of the commanding officer and the officer of the day, and reports to the latter without delay all orders to the guard not received from the officer of the day; he transmits to his successor all material instructions and information relating to his duties.

43. He is responsible under the officer of the day for the general safety of the post or camp as soon as the old guard marches away from the guardhouse. In case of emergency, while both guards are at the guardhouse, the senior commander of the two guards will be responsible that the proper action is taken.

44. Officers of the guard will remain constantly with their guards, except while visiting patrols or necessarily engaged elsewhere in the performance of their duties. The commanding officer will allow a reasonable time for meals.

45. A commander of a guard leaving his post for any purpose will inform the next in command of his destination and probable time of return.

46. Except in emergencies, the commander of the guard may divide the night with the next in command, but retains his responsibility; the one on watch must be constantly on the alert.

47. When any alarm is raised in camp or garrison, the guard will be informed immediately. (Par. 234.) If the case be serious, the proper call will be sounded, and the commander of the guard will cause the commanding officer and the officer of the day to be at once notified.

48. If a sentinel calls: "The guard," the commander of the guard will at once send a patrol to the sentinel's post. If the danger be great, in which case the sentinel will discharge his piece, the patrol will be as strong as possible.

49. When practicable, there should always be an officer or noncommissioned officer and two privates of the guard at the guardhouse, in addition to the sentinels there on post.

50. Between reveille and retreat, when the guard had been turned out for any person entitled to the compliment (see pars. 222 and 224), the commander of the guard, if an officer, will receive the report of the sergeant, returning the salute of the latter with the right hand. He will then draw his saber, and place himself two paces in front of the center of the guard. When the person for whom the guard has been turned out approaches, he faces his guard and commands: 1. **Present**, 2. **ARMS**; faces to the front and salutes. When his salute is acknowledged he resumes the carry, faces about, and commands: 1. **Order**, 2. **ARMS**; and faces to the front.

If it be an officer entitled to inspect the guard, after saluting and before bringing his guard to an order, the officer of the guard reports: "**Sir, all present or accounted for**"; or "**Sir, (so and so) is absent**"; or, if the roll call has been omitted: "**Sir, the guard is formed**," except that at guard mounting the commanders of the guards present their guards and salute without making any report.

Between retreat and reveille the commander of the guard salutes and reports, but does not bring the guard to a present.

51. To those entitled to have the guard turned out but not entitled to inspect it, no report will be made; nor will a report be made to any officer unless he halts in front of the guard.

52. When a guard commanded by a noncommissioned officer is turned out as a compliment or for inspection, the noncommissioned officer, standing at a right shoulder on the right of the right guide, commands: 1. Present, 2. ARMS. He then execute the rifle salute. If a report be also required, he will, after saluting, and before bringing his guard to an order, report as prescribed for the officer of the guard. (Par. 50.)

53. When a guard is in line, not under inspection, and commanded by an officer, the commander of the guard salutes his regimental, battalion, and company commander, by bringing the guard to attention and saluting in person.

For all other officers, excepting those entitled to the compliment from a guard (par. 224), the commander of the guard salutes in person, but does not bring the guard to attention.

When commanded by a noncommissioned officer, the guard is brought to attention in either case, and the noncommissioned officer salutes.

The commander of a guard exchanges salutes with the commanders of all other bodies of troops; the guard is brought to attention during the exchange.

"Present arms" is executed by a guard only when it has turned out for inspection or as a compliment, and at the ceremonies of guard mounting and relieving the old guard.

54. In marching a guard or a detachment of a guard the principles of paragraph 53 apply. "Eyes right" is executed only in the ceremonies of guard mounting and relieving the old guard.

55. If a person entitled to the compliment, or the regimental, battalion, or company commander, passes in rear of a guard, neither the compliment nor the salute is given, but the guard is brought to attention while such person is opposite the post of the commander.

After any person has received or declined the compliment, or received the salute from the commander of the guard, official recognition of his presence thereafter while he remains in the vicinity will be taken by bringing the guard to attention.

56. The commander of the guard will inspect the guard at reveille and retreat, and at such other times as may be necessary, to assure himself that the men are in proper condition to perform their duties and that their arms and equipments are

in proper condition. For inspection by other officers, he prepares the guard in each case as directed by the inspecting officer.

57. The guard will not be paraded during ceremonies unless directed by the commanding officer.

58. At all formations members of the guard or reliefs will execute inspection arms as prescribed in the drill regulations of their arm.

59. The commander of the guard will see that all sentinels are habitually relieved every two hours, unless the weather or other cause makes it necessary that it be done at shorter or longer intervals, as directed by the commanding officer.

60. He will question his noncommissioned officers and sentinels relative to the instructions they may have received from the old guard; he will see that patrols and visits of inspection are made as directed by the officer of the day.

61. He will see that the special orders for each post and member of the guard, either written or printed, are posted in the guardhouse and, if practicable, in the sentry box or other sheltered place to which the member of the guard has constant access.

62. He will see that the proper calls are sounded at the hours appointed by the commanding officer.

63. Should a member of the guard be taken sick, or be arrested, or desert, or leave his guard, he will at once notify the officer of the day. (Par. 23.)

64. He will, when the countersign is used (pars. 210 to 216), communicate it to the noncommissioned officers of the guard and see that it is duly communicated to the sentinels before the hour for challenging; the countersign will not be given to sentinels posted at the guardhouse.

65. He will have the details for hoisting the flag at reveille and lowering it at retreat, and for firing the reveille and retreat gun, made in time for the proper performance of these duties. (See pars, 338, 344, 345, and 346.) He will see that the flags are kept in the best condition possible, and that they are never handled except in the proper performance of duty.

66. He may permit members of the guard while at the guardhouse to remove their head dress, overcoats, and gloves; if they leave the guardhouse for any purpose whatever, he will require that they be properly equipped and armed according to the

character of the service in which engaged, or as directed by the commanding officer.

67. He will enter in the guard report a report of his tour of duty and, on the completion of his tour, will present it to the officer of the day. He will transmit with his report all passes turned in at the post of the guard.

68. Whenever a prisoner is sent to the guardhouse or guard tent for confinement, he will cause him to be searched, and will, without unnecessary delay, report the case to the officer of the day.

69. Under war conditions, if anyone is to be passed out of camp at night, he will be sent to the commander of the guard who will have him passed beyond the sentinels.

70. The commander of the guard will detain at the guardhouse all suspicious characters, or parties attempting to pass a sentinel's post without authority, reporting his action to the officer of the day, to whom persons so arrested will be sent, if necessary.

71. He will inspect the guardrooms and cells, and the irons of such prisoners as may be ironed, at least once during his tour, and at such other times as he may deem necessary.

72. He will cause the corporals of the old and new reliefs to verify together, immediately before each relief goes on post, the number of prisoners who should then properly be at the guardhouse.

73. He will see that the sentences of prisoners under his charge are executed strictly in accordance with the action of the reviewing authority.

74. When no special prisoner guard has been detailed (par. 300), he will, as far as practicable, assign as guards over working parties of prisoners sentinels from posts guarded at night only.

75. The commander of the guard will inspect all meals sent to the guardhouse and see that the quantity and quality of food are in accordance with regulations.

76. At guard mounting he will report to the old officer of the day all cases of prisoners whose terms of sentence expire on that day, and also all cases of prisoners concerning whom no statement of charges has been received. (See par. 241.)

77. The commander of the guard is responsible for the security of the prisoners under the charge of his guard; he

becomes responsible for them after their number has been verified and they have been turned over to the custody of his guard by the old guard or by the prisoner guard or overseers.

78. The prisoners will be verified and turned over to the new guard without parading them, unless the commanding officer or the officer of the day shall direct otherwise.

79. To receive the prisoners at the guardhouse when they have been paraded and after they have been verified by the officers of the day, the commander of the new guard directs his sergeant to form his guard with an interval, and commands: 1. **Prisoners**, 2. **Right**, 3. **FACE**, 4. **Forward**, 5. **MARCH**. The prisoners having arrived opposite the interval in the new guard, he commands: 1. **Prisoners**, 2. **HALT**, 3. **Left**, 4. **FACE**, 5. **Right** (or **left**), 6. **DRESS**, 7. **FRONT**.

The prisoners dress on the line of the new guard.

Sergeant of the Guard.

80. The senior noncommissioned officer of the guard always acts as sergeant of the guard, and, if there be no officer of the guard, will perform the duties prescribed for the commander of the guard.

81. The sergeant of the guard has general supervision over the other noncommissioned officers and the musicians and privates of the guard, and must be thoroughly familiar with all of their orders and duties.

82. He is directly responsible for the property under charge of the guard, and will see that it is properly cared for. He will make lists of articles taken out by working parties and see that all such articles are duly returned. If they are not, he will immediately report the fact to the commander of the guard.

83. Immediately after guard mounting he will prepare duplicate lists of the names of all noncommissioned officers, musicians, and privates of the guard, showing the relief and post or duties of each. One list will be handed as soon as possible to the commander of the guard; the other will be retained by the sergeant.

84. He will see that all reliefs are turned out at the proper time, and that the corporals thoroughly understand, and are prompt and efficient in, the discharge of their duties.

85. During the temporary absence from the guardhouse of the sergeant of the guard, the next in rank of the noncommissioned officers will perform his duties.

86. Should the corporal whose relief is on post be called away from the guardhouse, the sergeant of the guard will designate a noncommissioned officer to take the corporal's place until his return.

87. The sergeant of the guard is responsible at all times for the proper police of the guardhouse or guard tent, including the ground about them and the prison cells.

88. At first sergeant's call he will proceed to the adjutant's office and obtain the guard report book.

89. When the national or regimental colors are taken from the stacks of the color line, the color bearer and guard, or the sergeant of the guard, unarmed, and two armed privates as a guard, will escort the colors to the colonel's quarters, as prescribed for the color guard in the drill regulations of the arm of the service to which the guard belongs.

90. He will report to the commander of the guard any suspicious or unusual occurrence that comes under his notice, will warn him of the approach of any armed body, and will send to him all persons arrested by the guard.

91. When the guard is turned out its formation will be as follows: The senior noncommissioned officer, if commander of the guard, is on the right of the right guide; if not commander of the guard, he is in the line of file closers, in rear of the right four of the guard; the next in rank is right guide; the next left guide; the others in the line of file closers, usually each in rear of his relief; the field music, with its left three paces to the right of the right guide. The reliefs form in the same order as when the guard was first divided, except that if the guard consists of dismounted cavalry and infantry, the cavalry forms on the left.

92. The sergeant forms the guard, calls the roll, and, if not in command of the guard, reports to the commander of the guard as prescribed in drill regulations for a first sergeant forming a troop or company; the guard is not divided into platoons or sections, and, except when the whole guard is formed prior to marching off, fours are not counted.

93. The sergeant reports as follows: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, (so-and-so) is absent"; or if the roll

call has been omitted, "**Sir, the guard is formed.**" Only men absent without proper authority are reported absent. He then takes his place, without command.

94. At night the roll may be called by reliefs and numbers instead of names; thus, the first relief being on post: **Second relief; No. 1; No. 2, etc.; Third relief, Corporal; No. 1, etc.**

95. Calling the roll will be dispensed with in forming the guard when it is turned out as a compliment, on the approach of an armed body, or in any sudden emergency; but in such cases the roll may be called before dismissing the guard. If the guard be turned out for an officer entitled to inspect it, the roll will, unless he directs otherwise, always be called before a report is made.

96. The sergeant of the guard has direct charge of the prisoners, except during such time as they may be under the charge of the prisoner guard or overseers, and is responsible to the commander of the guard for their security.

97. He will carry the keys of the guardroom and cells, and will not suffer them to leave his personal possession while he is at the guardhouse, except as hereinafter provided. (Par. 99.) Should he leave the guardhouse for any purpose, he will turn the keys over to the noncommissioned officer who takes his place. (Par. 85.)

98. He will count the knives, forks, etc., given to the prisoners with their food, and see that none of these articles remain in their possession. He will see that no forbidden articles of any kind are conveyed to the prisoners.

99. Prisoners when paraded with the guard are placed in line, in its center. The sergeant, immediately before forming the guard, will turn over his keys to the noncommissioned officer at the guardhouse. Having formed the guard, he will divide it into two nearly equal parts. Indicating the point of division with his hand, he commands: 1. **Right** (or **left**), 2. **FACE**, 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH**, 5. **Guard**, 6. **HALT**, 7. **Left** (or **right**), 8. **FACE**.

If the first command be **right face**, the right half of the guard only will execute the movements; if **left face**, the left half only will execute them. The command **halt** is given when sufficient interval is obtained to admit the prisoners. The doors of the guardroom and cells are then opened by the noncommissioned officer having the keys. The prisoners will file out under

the supervision of the sergeant, the noncommissioned officer, and sentinel on duty at the guardhouse, and such other sentinels as may be necessary; they will form in line in the interval between the two parts of the guard.

100. To return the prisoners to the guardroom and cells, the sergeant commands: 1. **Prisoners**, 2. **Right** (or left), 3. **FACE**, 4. **Column right** (or left), 5. **MARCH**.

The prisoners, under the same supervision as before, return to their proper rooms or cells.

101. To close the guard, the sergeant commands: 1. **Left** (or right), 2. **FACE**, 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH**, 5. **Guard**, 6. **HALT**, 7. **Right** (or left), 8. **FACE**.

The left or right half only of the guard, as indicated, executes the movement.

102. If there be but few prisoners, the sergeant may indicate the point of division as above, and form the necessary interval by the commands: 1. **Right** (or left) **step**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT** and close the intervals by the commands: 1. **Left** (or right) **step**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**.

103. If sentinels are numerous, reliefs may, at the discretion of the commanding officer, be posted in detachments, and sergeants, as well as corporals, required to relieve and post them.

Corporal of the Guard.

104. A corporal of the guard receives and obeys orders from none but noncommissioned officers of the guard senior to himself, the officers of the guard, the officer of the day, and the commanding officer.

105. It is the duty of the corporal of the guard to post and relieve sentinels, and to instruct the members of his relief in their orders and duties.

106. Immediately after the division of the guard into reliefs the corporals will assign the members of their respective reliefs to posts by number, and a soldier so assigned to his post will not be changed to another during the same tour of guard duty, unless by directoin of the commander of the guard or higher authority. Usually, experienced soldiers are placed over the arms of the guard, and at remote and responsible posts.

107. Each corporal will then make a list of the members of his relief, including himself. This list will contain the number

of the relief, the name, the company, and the regiment of every member thereof, and the post to which each is assigned. The list will be made in duplicate, one copy to be given to the sergeant of the guard as soon as completed, the other to be retained by the corporal.

108. When directed by the commander of the guard, the corporal of the first relief forms his relief, and then commands: **CALL OFF.**

Commencing on the right, the men call off alternately rear and front rank, "one," "two," "three," "four," and so on; if in single rank, they call off from right to left. The corporal then commands: 1. **Right**, 2. **FACE**, 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH.**

The corporal marches on the left, and near the rear file, in order to observe the march. The corporal of the old guard marches on the right of the leading file, and takes command when the last one of the old sentinels is relieved, changing places with the corporal of the new guard.

109. When the relief arrives at six paces from a sentinel (See Par. 168), the corporal halts it and commands, according to the number of the post: **No.** (——.)

Both sentinels execute port arms or saber; the new sentinel approaches the old, halting about one pace from him. (See Par. 172.)

110. The corporals advance and place themselves, facing each other, a little in advance of the new sentinel, the old corporal on his right, the new corporal on his left, both at a right shoulder, and observe that the old sentinel transmits correctly his instructions.

The following diagram will illustrate the positions taken:

R is the relief; A, the new corporal; B, the old; C, the new sentinel; D, the old.

111. The instructions relative to the post having been communicated, the new corporal commands, **Post**; both sentinels

then resume the right shoulder, face toward the new corporal and step back so as to allow the relief to pass in front of them. The new corporal then commands: "1. **Forward**, 2. **March**"; the old sentinel takes his place in rear of the relief as it passes him, his piece in the same position as those of the relief. The new sentinel stands fast at a right shoulder until the relief has passed six paces beyond him, when he walks his post. The corporals take their places as the relief passes them.

112. Mounted sentinels are posted and relieved in accordance with the same principles.

113. On the return of the old relief, the corporal of the new guard falls out when the relief halts; the corporal of the old guard forms his relief on the left of the old guard, salutes, and reports to the commander of his guard: "**Sir, the relief is present**"; or "**Sir, (so and so) is absent,**" and takes his place in the guard.

114. To post a relief other than that which is posted when the old guard is relieved, its corporal commands:

1. (Such) relief, 2. **FALL IN**; and if arms are stacked, they are taken at the proper commands.

The relief is formed facing to the front, with arms at an order; the men place themselves according to the numbers of their respective posts, viz, two, four, six, and so on, in the front rank, and one, three, five, and so on, in the rear rank. The corporal, standing about two paces in front of the center of his relief, then commands: **CALL OFF.**

The men call off as prescribed. The corporal then commands: 1. **Inspection**, 2. **ARMS**, 3. **Order**, 4. **ARMS**; faces the commander of the guard, executes the rifle salute, reports: "**Sir, the relief is present**"; or "**Sir, (so and so) is absent**"; he then takes his place on the right at order arms.

115. When the commander of the guard directs the corporal, **Post your relief**, the corporal salutes and posts his relief as prescribed (Pars. 108 to 111); the corporal of the relief on post does not go with the new relief, except when necessary to show the way.

116. To dismiss the old relief, it is halted and faced to the front at the guardhouse by the corporal of the new relief, who then falls out; the corporal of the old relief then steps in front of the relief and dismisses it by the proper commands.

117. Should the pieces have been loaded before the relief was posted, the corporal will, before dismissing the relief, see that

no cartridges are left in the chambers or magazines. The same rule applies to sentinels over prisoners.

118. Each corporal will thoroughly acquaint himself with all the special orders of every sentinel on his relief, and see that each understands and correctly transmits such orders in detail to his successor.

119. There should be at least one noncommissioned officer constantly on the alert at the guardhouse, usually the corporal whose relief is on post. This noncommissioned officer takes post near the entrance of the guardhouse, and does not fall in with the guard when it is formed. He will have his rifle constantly with him.

120. Whenever it becomes necessary for the corporal to leave his post near the entrance of the guardhouse, he will notify the sergeant of the guard, who will at once take his place, or designate another noncommissioned officer to do so.

121. He will see that no person enters the guardhouse or guard tent, or crosses the posts of the sentinels there posted without proper authority.

122. Should any sentinel call for the corporal of the guard, the corporal will, in every case, at once and quickly proceed to such sentinel. He will notify the sergeant of the guard before leaving the guardhouse.

123. He will at once report to the commander of the guard any violation of regulations or any unusual occurrence which is reported to him by a sentinel, or which comes to his notice in any other way.

124. Should a sentinel call "**The Guard,**" the corporal will promptly notify the commander of the guard.

125. Should a sentinel call "**Relief,**" the corporal will at once proceed to the post of such sentinel, taking with him the man next for duty on that post. If the sentinel is relieved for a short time only, the corporal will again post him as soon as the necessity for his relief ceases.

126. When the countersign is used, the corporal at the posting of the relief during whose tour challenging is to begin gives the countersign to the members of the relief, excepting those posted at the guardhouse.

127. He will wake the corporal whose relief is next on post in time for the latter to verify the prisoners, form his relief, and post it at the proper hour.

128. Should the guard be turned out, each corporal will call his own relief, and cause its members to fall in promptly.

129. Tents or bunks in the same vicinity will be designated for the reliefs so that all the members of each relief may, if necessary, be found and turned out by the corporal in the least time and with the least confusion.

130. When challenged by a sentinel while posting his relief, the corporal commands: 1. **Relief**, 2. **HALT**; to the sentinel's challenge he answers "**Relief**," and at the order of the sentinel he advances alone to give the countersign, or to be recognized. When the sentinel says, "**Advance relief**," the corporal commands: 1. **Forward**, 2. **MARCH**.

If to be relieved, the sentinel is then relieved as prescribed.

131. Between retreat and reveille, the corporal of the guard will challenge all suspicious looking persons or parties he may observe, first halting his patrol or relief, if either be with him. He will advance them in the same manner that sentinels on post advance like parties (Pars. 191 to 197), but if the route of a patrol is on a continuous chain of sentinels, he should not challenge persons coming near him unless he has reason to believe that they have eluded the vigilance of sentinels.

132. Between retreat and reveille, whenever so ordered by an officer entitled to inspect the guard, the corporal will call: "**Turn out the guard**," announcing the title of the officer, and then, if not otherwise ordered, he will salute and return to his post.

133. As a general rule he will advance parties approaching the guard at night in the same manner that sentinels on post advance like parties. Thus, the sentinel at the guardhouse challenges and repeats the answer to the corporal, as prescribed hereafter (par. 200); the corporal, advancing at port arms, says: "**Advance (so and so) with the countersign**," or "**to be recognized**," if there be no countersign used; the countersign being correctly given, or the party being duly recognized, the corporal says: "**Advance (so and so)**," repeating the answer to the challenge of the sentinel.

134. When officers of different rank approach the guardhouse from different directions at the same time, the senior will be advanced first, and will not be made to wait for his junior.

135. Out of ranks and under arms, the corporal salutes with the rifle salute. He will salute all officers whether by day or night.

136. The corporal will examine parties halted and detained by sentinels, and if he have reason to believe the parties have no authority to cross sentinel's posts, will conduct them to the commander of the guard.

137. The corporal of the guard will arrest all suspicious looking characters prowling about the post or camp, all persons of a disorderly character disturbing the peace, and all persons taken in the act of committing crime against the Government on a military reservation or post. All persons arrested by corporals of the guard or by sentinels will at once be conducted to the commander of the guard by the corporal.

Musicians of the Guard.

138. The musicians of the guard will sound calls as prescribed by the commanding officer.

139. Should the guard be turned out for national or regimental colors or standards, uncased, the field music of the guard will, when the guard present arms, sound, "To the color" or "To the standard"; or, if for any person entitled thereto, the march, flourishes, or ruffles, prescribed in paragraphs 375, 376, and 377, A. R.

Orderlies and Color Sentinels.

140. When so directed by the commanding officer, the officer who inspects the guard at guard mounting will select from the members of the new guard an orderly for the commanding officer and such number of other orderlies and color sentinels as may be required.

141. For these positions the soldiers will be chosen who are most correct in the performance of duty and in military bearing, neatest in person and clothing, and whose arms and accouterments are in the best condition. Clothing, arms, and equipments must conform to regulations. If there is any doubt as to the relative qualifications of two or more soldiers, the inspecting officer will cause them to fall out at the guardhouse and to form in line in single rank. He will then, by testing them in drill regulations, select the most proficient. The commander of the guard will be notified of the selection.

142. When directed by the commander of the guard to fall out and report, an orderly will give his name, company, and

regiment to the sergeant of the guard, and, leaving his rifle in the arm rack in his company quarters, will proceed at once to the officer to whom he is assigned, reporting: "Sir, Private ———, Company ———, reports as orderly."

143. If the orderly selected be a cavalryman, he will leave his rifle in the arm rack of his troop quarters, and report with his belt on, but without side arms unless specially otherwise ordered.

144. Orderlies, while on duty as such, are subject only to the orders of the commanding officer, and of the officers to whom they are ordered to report.

145. When an orderly is ordered to carry a message, he will be careful to deliver it exactly as it was given to him.

146. His tour of duty ends when he is relieved by the orderly selected from the guard relieving his own.

147. Orderlies are members of the guard, and their name, company, and regiment are entered on the guard report and lists of the guard.

148. If a color line is established, sufficient sentinels are placed on the color line to guard the colors and stacks.

149. Color sentinels are posted only so long as the stacks are formed. The commander of the guard will divide the time equally among them.

150. When stacks are broken, the color sentinels may be permitted to return to their respective companies. They are required to report in person to the commander of the guard at reveille and retreat. They will fall in with the guard, under arms, at guard mounting.

151. Color sentinels are not placed on the regular reliefs, nor are their posts numbered. In calling for the corporal of the guard, they call: "Corporal of the guard. Color line."

152. Officers or enlisted men passing the uncased colors will render the prescribed salute. If the colors are on the stacks, the salute will be made on crossing the color line or on passing the colors.

153. A sentinel placed over the colors will not permit them to be moved except in the presence of an armed escort. Unless otherwise ordered by the commanding officer, he will allow no one to touch them but the color bearer.

He will not permit any soldier to take arms from the stacks or to touch them except by order of an officer or noncommissioned officer of the guard.

If any person passing the colors or crossing the color line fails to salute the colors, the sentinel will caution him to do so, and if the caution be not heeded he will call the corporal of the guard and report the facts.

Privates of the Guard.

154. Privates are assigned to reliefs by the commander of the guard, and to posts usually by the corporal of their relief. They will not change from one relief or post to another during the same tour of guard duty unless by proper authority.

Orders for Sentinels.

155. Orders for sentinals are of two classes: General orders and special orders. General orders apply to all sentinels. Special orders relate to particular posts and duties.

156. Sentinels will be required to memorize the following:

My general orders are:

1. To take charge of this post and all Government property in view.
2. To walk my post in a military manner keeping always on the alert and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.
3. To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.
4. To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.
5. To quit my post only when properly relieved.
6. To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentinel who relieves me, all orders from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only.
7. To talk to no one except in line of duty.
8. In case of fire or disorder to give the alarm.
9. To allow no one to commit a nuisance on or near my post.
10. In any case not covered by instructions to call the corporal of the guard.
11. To salute all officers, and all colors and standards not cased.
12. To be especially watchful at night, and during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.

Regulations Relating to the General Orders for Sentinels.

No. 1: To take charge of this post and all Government property in view.

157. All persons, of whatever rank in the service, are required to observe respect toward sentinels and members of the guard when such are in the performance of their duties.

158. A sentinel will at once report to the corporal of the guard every unusual or suspicious occurrence noted.

159. He will arrest suspicious persons prowling about the post or camp at any time, all parties to a disorder occurring on or near his post, and all, except authorized persons, who attempt to enter the camp at night, and will turn over to the corporal of the guard all persons arrested.

160. The number, limits, and extent of his post will invariably constitute part of the special orders of a sentinel on post. The limits of his post should be so defined as to include every place to which he is required to go in the performance of his duties.

No. 2: To walk my post in a military manner, keeping always on the alert and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.

161. A sentinel is not required to halt and change the position of his rifle on arriving at the end of his post, nor to execute to the rear, march, precisely as prescribed in the drill regulations, but faces about while walking in the manner most convenient to him and at any part of his post as may be best suited to the proper performance of his duties. He carries his rifle on either shoulder, and in wet or severe weather, when not in a sentry box, may carry it at a secure.

162. Sentinels when in sentry boxes stand at ease. Sentry boxes will be used in wet weather only, or at other times when specially authorized by the commanding officer.

163. In very hot weather, sentinels may be authorized to stand at ease on their posts, provided they can effectively discharge their duties in this position; but they will take advantage of this privilege only on the express authority of the officer of the day or the commander of the guard.

164. A mounted sentinel may dismount occasionally and lead his horse, but will not relax his vigilance.

No. 3: To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.

165. A sentinel will ordinarily report a violation of orders when he is inspected or relieved, but if the case be urgent, he will call the corporal of the guard, and also, if necessary, will arrest the offender.

No. 4: To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.

166. To call the corporal or the guard for any purpose other than relief, fire, or disorder (pars. 167 and 173), a sentinel will call, "**Corporal of the guard, No. (——),**" adding the number of his post. In no case will any sentinel call, "**Never mind the corporal;**" nor will the corporal heed such call if given.

No. 5; To quit my post only when properly relieved.

167. If relief becomes necessary, by reason of sickness or other cause, a sentinel will call, "**Corporal of the guard, No. (——), Relief,**" giving the number of his post.

168. Whenever a sentinel is to be relieved, he will halt, and with arms at a right shoulder, will face toward the relief, when it is 30 paces from him. He will come to a port arms with the new sentinel, and in a low tone will transmit to him all the special orders relating to the post and any other information which will assist him to better perform his duties.

No. 6: To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentinel who relieves me, all orders from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only.

169. During his tour of duty a soldier is subject to the orders of the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only; but any officer is competent to investigate apparent violations of regulations by members of the guard.

170. A sentinel will quit his piece on an explicit order from any person from whom he lawfully receives orders while on post; under no circumstances will he yield it to any other per-

son. Unless necessity therefor exists, no person will require a sentinel to quit his piece, even to allow it to be inspected.

171. A sentinel will not divulge the countersign (pars. 209 to 217) to anyone except the sentinel who relieves him, or to a person from whom he properly receives orders, on such person's verbal order given personally. Privates of the guard will not use the countersign except in the performance of their duties while posted as sentinels.

No. 7: To talk to no one except in line of duty.

172. When calling for any purpose, challenging or holding communication with any person a dismounted sentinel armed with a rifle or saber will take the position of port arms or saber. At night a dismounted sentinel armed with a pistol takes the position of raised pistol in challenging or holding communication. A mounted sentinel does not ordinarily draw his weapon in the daytime when challenging or holding conversation; but if drawn, he holds it at advance rifle, raise pistol, or port saber, according as he is armed with a rifle, pistol, or saber. At night in challenging and holding conversation his weapon is drawn and held as just prescribed, depending on whether he is armed with a rifle, pistol, or saber.

No. 8: In case of fire or disorder to give the alarm.

173. In case of fire, a sentinel will call, "Fire, No. (——)," adding the number of his post; if possible, he will extinguish the fire himself. In case of disorder he will call, "The Guard, No. (——)," adding the number of his post. If the danger be great, he will in either case discharge his piece before calling.

No. 11: To salute all officers and all colors and standards not cased.

174. When not engaged in the performance of a specific duty, the proper execution of which would prevent it, a member of the guard will salute all officers who pass him. This rule applies at all hours of the day or night, except in the case of mounted sentinels armed with a rifle or pistol, or dismounted sentinels armed with a pistol, after challenging. (See par. 181.)

175. Sentinels will salute as follows: A dismounted sentinel armed with a rifle or saber, salutes by presenting arms; if otherwise armed, he salutes with the right hand.

A mounted sentinel, if armed with a saber and the saber be drawn, salutes by presenting saber; otherwise he salutes in all cases with the right hand.

176. To salute, a dismounted sentinel, with piece at a right shoulder or saber at a carry, halts and faces toward the person to be saluted when the latter arrives within 30 paces.

The limit within which individuals and insignia of rank can be readily recognized is assumed to be about 30 paces, and therefore at this distance cognizance is taken of the person or party to be saluted.

177. The salute is rendered at six paces; if the person to be saluted does not arrive within that distance, then when he is nearest.

178. A sentinel in a sentry box, armed with a rifle, stands at attention in the doorway on the approach of a person or party entitled to salute, and salutes by presenting arms according to the foregoing rules.

If armed with a saber, he stands at a carry and salutes as before.

179. A mounted sentinel on a regular post, halts, faces, and salutes in accordance with the foregoing rules. If doing patrol duty, he salutes, but does not halt unless spoken to.

180. Sentinels salute, in accordance with the foregoing rules, all persons and parties entitled to compliments from the guards (paragraphs 224, 227, and 228); officers of the Army, Navy, and Marine Corps; military and naval officers of foreign powers; officers of volunteers and militia officers when in uniform.

181. A sentinel salutes as just prescribed when an officer comes on his post; if the officer holds communication with the sentinel, the sentinel again salutes when the officer leaves him.

During the hours when challenging is prescribed, the first salute is given as soon as the officer has been duly recognized and advanced. A mounted sentinel armed with a rifle or pistol, or a dismounted sentinel armed with a pistol, does not salute after challenging.

He stands at advance rifle or raise pistol until the officer passes.

182. In case of the approach of an armed party of the guard, the sentinel will halt when it is about 30 paces from him, facing toward the party with his piece at the right shoulder. If not himself relieved, he will, as the party passes, place himself so that the party will pass in front of him; he resumes walking his post when the party has reached six paces beyond him.

183. An officer is entitled to the compliments prescribed, whether in uniform or not.

184. A sentinel in communication with an officer will not interrupt the conversation to salute. In the case of seniors the officer will salute, whereupon the sentinel will salute.

185. When the flag is being lowered at retreat, a sentinel on post and in view of the flag will face the flag, and, at the first note of the Star Spangled Banner or to the color will come to a present arms. At the sounding of the last note he will resume walking his post.

No. 12: **To be especially watchful at night and during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post, and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.**

186. During challenging hours, if a sentinel sees any person or party on or near his post, he will advance rapidly along his post toward such person or party and when within about 30 yards will challenge sharply, "**Halt, Who is there?**" He will place himself in the best possible position to receive or, if necessary, to arrest the person or party.

187. In case a mounted party be challenged, the sentinel will call, "**Halt, Dismount. Who is there?**"

188. The sentinel will permit only one of any party to approach him for the purpose of giving the countersign (pars. 209 to 217), or, if no countersign be used, of being duly recognized. When this is done the whole party is advanced, i. e., allowed to pass.

189. In all cases the sentinel must satisfy himself beyond a reasonable doubt that the parties are what they represent themselves to be and have a right to pass. If he is not satisfied, he must cause them to stand and call the corporal of the guard. So, likewise, if he have no authority to pass persons with the countersign, or when the party has not the countersign, or gives an incorrect one.

190. A sentinel will not permit any person to approach so close as to prevent the proper use of his own weapon before recognizing the person or receiving the countersign.

191. When two or more persons approach in one party, the sentinel, on receiving an answer that indicates that some one in the party has the countersign, will say, "Advance one with the countersign," and, if the countersign is given correctly, will then say, "Advance (So and so)," repeating the answer to his challenge. Thus if the answer be "Relief (Friends with the countersign, Patrol, etc.)," the sentinel will say, "Advance one with the countersign"; then "Advance relief (friends, patrol, etc.)."

192. If a person having the countersign approach alone, he is advanced to give the countersign. Thus if the answer be "Friend with the countersign (or officer of the day, or etc.)," the sentinel will say, "Advance, friend (or officer of the day, or etc.) with the countersign"; then "Advance, friend (or officer of the day, or etc.)"

193. If two or more persons approach a sentinel's post from different directions at the same time, all such persons are challenged in turn and required to halt and to remain halted until advanced.

The senior is first advanced, in accordance with the foregoing rules.

194. If a party is already advanced and in communication with a sentinel, the latter will challenge any other party that may approach; if the party challenged be senior to the one already on his post, the sentinel will advance the new party at once. The senior may allow him to advance any or all of the other parties; otherwise, the sentinel will not advance any of them until the senior leaves him. He will then advance the senior only of the remaining parties, and so on.

195. The following order of rank will govern a sentinel in advancing different persons or parties approaching his post: Commanding officer, officer of the day, officer of the guard, officers, patrols, reliefs, noncommissioned officers of the guard in order of rank, friends.

196. A sentinel will never allow himself to be surprised, nor permit two parties to advance upon him at the same time.

197. If no countersign be used, the rules for challenging are the same. The rules for advancing parties are modified only

as follows: Instead of saying "Advance (so and so) with the countersign," the sentinel will say, "Advance (so and so) to be recognized." Upon recognition he will say, "Advance (so and so)."

198. Answers to a sentinel's challenge intended to confuse or mislead him are prohibited, but the use of such an answer as "Friends with the countersign," is not to be understood as misleading, but as the usual answer made by officers, patrols, etc., when the purpose of their visit makes it desirable that their official capacity should not be announced.

Special Orders for Sentinels at the Post of the Guard.

199. Sentinels posted at the guard will be required to memorize the following:

Between reveille and retreat to turn out the guard for all persons designated by the commanding officer, for all colors or standards not cased, and in time of war for all armed parties approaching my post, except troops at drill and reliefs and detachments of the guard.

At night, after challenging any person or party, to advance no one but call the corporal of the guard, repeating the answer to the challenge.

200. After receiving an answer to his challenge, the sentinel calls, "Corporal of the guard (so and so)," repeating the answer to the challenge.

He does not in such cases repeat the number of his post.

201. He remains in the position assumed in challenging until the corporal has recognized or advanced the person or party challenged, when he resumes walking his post, or, if the person or party be entitled thereto, he salutes and, as soon as the salute has been acknowledged, resumes walking his post.

202. The sentinel at the post of the guard will be notified by direction of the commanding officer of the presence in camp or garrison of persons entitled to the compliment. (Par. 224.)

203. The following examples illustrate the manner in which the sentinel at the post of the guard will turn out the guard upon the approach of persons or parties entitled to the compliment (pars. 224, 227, and 228), "Turn out the guard, commanding officer"; "Turn out the guard, governor of a Territory";

"Turn out the guard, national colors"; "Turn out the guard, armed party"; etc.

At the approach of the new guard at guard mounting the sentinel will call, "Turn out the guard, armed party."

204. Should the person named by the sentinel not desire the guard formed, he will salute, whereupon the sentinel will call "Never mind the guard."

205. After having called "Turn out the guard," the sentinel will never call "Never mind the guard," on the approach of an armed party.

206. Though the guard be already formed he will not fail to call, "Turn out the guard," as required in his special orders, except that the guard will not be turned out for any person while his senior is at or coming to the post of the guard.

207. The sentinels at the post of the guard will warn the commander of the approach of any armed body and of the presence in the vicinity of all suspicious or disorderly persons.

208. In case of fire or disorder in sight or hearing, the sentinel at the guardhouse will call the corporal of the guard and report the facts to him.

Countersigns and Paroles.

209. *Forty-fourth article of war.*—Any person belonging to the armies of the United States who makes known the watchword to any person not entitled to receive it, according to the rules and discipline of war, or presumes to give a parole or watchword different from that which he received, shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct. (See par. 171.)

210. The countersign is a word given daily from the principal headquarters of a command to aid guards and sentinels in identifying persons who may be authorized to pass at night.

It is given to such persons as may be authorized to pass and repass sentinels' posts during the night, and to officers, noncommissioned officers, and sentinels of the guard.

211. The parole is a word used as a check on the countersign in order to obtain more accurate identification of persons. It is imparted only to those who are entitled to inspect guards and to commanders of guards.

The parole or countersign, or both, are sent sealed in the form of an order to those entitled to them.

212. When the commander of the guard demands the parole, he will advance and receive it as the corporal receives the countersign. (See par. 133.)

213. As the communications containing the parole and countersign must at times be distributed by many orderlies, the parole intrusted to many officers, and the countersign and parole to many officers and sentinels, and as both the countersign and parole must, for large commands, be prepared several days in advance, there is always danger of their being lost or becoming known to persons who would make improper use of them; moreover, a sentinel is too apt to take it for granted that any person who gives the right countersign is what he represents himself to be; hence for outpost duty there is greater security in omitting the use of the countersign and parole, or in using them with great caution. The chief reliance should be upon personal recognition or identification of all persons claiming authority to pass.

Persons whose sole means of identification is the countersign, or concerning whose authority to pass there is a reasonable doubt, should not be allowed to pass without the authority of the corporal of the guard after proper investigation; the corporal will take to his next superior any person about whom he is not competent to decide.

214. The **countersign** is usually the name of a battle; the **parole**, that of a general or other distinguished person.

215. When they can not be communicated daily, a series of words for some days in advance may be sent to posts or detachments that are to use the same parole or countersign as the main body.

216. If the countersign be lost, or if a member of the guard deserts with it, the commander on the spot will substitute another for it and report the case at once to headquarters.

217. In addition to the countersign, use may be made of preconcerted signals, such as striking the rifle with the hand or striking the hands together a certain number of times as agreed upon. Such signals may be used only by guards that occupy exposed points.

They are used before the countersign is given and must not be communicated to anyone not entitled to know the countersign. Their use is intended to prevent the surprise of a sentinel.

In the daytime signals such as raising a cap or a handkerchief in a prearranged manner may be used by sentinels to communicate with the guard or with each other.

Guard Patrols.

218. A guard patrol consists of one or more men detailed for the performance of some special service connected with guard duty.

219. If the patrol be required to go beyond the chain of sentinels, the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge will be furnished with the countersign and the outposts and sentinels warned.

220. If challenged by a sentinel, the patrol is halted by its commander, and the noncommissioned officer accompanying it advances alone and gives the countersign.

Watchmen.

221. Enlisted men may be detailed as watchmen or as overseers over prisoners, and as such will receive their orders and perform their duties as the commanding officer may direct.

Compliments from Guards.

222. The compliment from a guard consists in the guard turning out and presenting arms. (See par. 50.) No compliments will be paid between retreat and reveille except as provided in paragraphs 361 and 362, nor will any person other than those named in paragraph 224 receive the compliment.

223. Though a guard does not turn out between retreat and reveille as a matter of compliment it may be turned out for inspection at any time by a person entitled to inspect it.

224. Between reveille and retreat, the following persons are entitled to the compliment: The President; sovereign or chief magistrate of a foreign country and members of a royal family; Vice President; President and President pro tempore of the Senate; American and foreign ambassadors; members of the Cabinet; Chief Justice; Speaker of the House of Representatives; committees of Congress officially visiting a military post; governors within their respective States and Territories; governors general; Assistant Secretary of War officially visiting a military post; all general officers of the Army; general officers of foreign services visiting a post; naval, marine, volunteer, and militia officers in the service of the United States and holding the rank of general officer; American or foreign envoys or minis-

ters; ministers accredited to the United States; Chargés d'affaires accredited to the United States; consuls general accredited to the United States; commanding officer of the post or camp; officer of the day.

225. The relative rank between officers of the Army and Navy is as follows: General with admiral, lieutenant general with vice admiral, major general with rear admiral, brigadier general with commodore,[1] colonel with captain, lieutenant colonel with commander, major with lieutenant commander, captain with lieutenant, first lieutenant with lieutenant (junior grade), second lieutenant with ensign. (A. R. 12.)

226. Sentinels will not be required to memorize paragraph 224 and except in the cases of general officers of the Army, the commanding officer and the officer of the day will be advised in each case of the presence in camp or garrison of persons entitled to the compliment.

227. Guards will turn out and present arms when the national or regimental colors or standards, not cased, are carried past by a guard or an armed party. This rule also applies when the party carrying the colors is at drill. If the drill is conducted in the vicinity of the guardhouse, the guard will be turned out when the colors first pass, and not thereafter.

228. In case the remains of a deceased officer or soldier are carried past, the guard will turn out and present arms.

229. In time of war all guards will turn out under arms when armed parties, except troops at drill and reliefs or detachments of the guard, approach their post. (See par. 53.)

230. The commander of the guard will be notified of the presence in camp or garrison of all persons entitled to the compliment except general officers of the Army, the commanding officer, and the officer of the day. Members of the guard will salute all persons entitled to the compliment and all officers in the military or naval service of foreign powers, officers of the Army, Navy, and Marine Corps, officers of volunteers, and officers of militia when in uniform.

---

[1] The grade of commodore ceased to exist as a grade on the active list of the Navy of the United States on March 3, 1899. By section 7, of the act of March 3, 1899, the nine junior rear admirals are authorized to receive the pay and allowances of a brigadier general of the Army.

General Rules Concerning Guard Duty.

231. *Thirty-sixth article of war.*—No soldier shall hire another to do his duty for him.

232. *Thirty-eighth article of war.*—Any soldier who is found drunk on his guard, party, or other duty shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial may direct.

233. All material instructions given to a member of the guard by an officer having authority will be promptly communicated to the commander of the guard by the officer giving them.

234. Should the guard be formed, soldiers will fall in ranks under arms. At roll call, each man, as his name or number and relief are called, will answer "Here," and come to an order arms.

235. Whenever the guard or a relief is dismissed, each member not at once required for duty will place his rifle in the arm racks, if they be provided, and will not remove it therefrom unless he requires it in the performance of some duty.

236. Without permission from the commander of the guard, members of the main guard, except orderlies, will not leave the immediate vicinity of the guardhouse. Permission to leave will not be granted except in cases of necessity.

237. Members of the main guard, except orderlies, will not remove their accouterments or clothing without permission from the commander of the guard. (Par. 66.)

Prisoners.

238. Articles of war 66, 67, 68, 69, and 70 have special reference to the confinement of prisoners and should be carefully borne in mind.

239. The commander of the guard will place a civilian in confinement on an order from higher authority only, unless such civilian is arrested while in the act of committing some crime within the limits of the military jurisdiction, in which case the commanding officer will be immediately notified.

240. Except as provided in the twenty-fourth article of war, or when restraint is necessary, no soldier will be confined without the order of an officer, who shall previously inquire into his offense. (A. R. 930.)

241. An officer ordering a soldier into confinement will send, as soon as practicable, a written statement, signed by himself, to the commander of the guard, setting forth the name, company, and regiment of such soldier, and a brief statement of the alleged offense. It is a sufficient statement of the offense to give the number and article of war under which the soldier is charged.

242. A prisoner, after his first day of confinement, and until his sentence has been duly promulgated, is considered as held in confinement by the commanding officer. After due promulgation of his sentence, the prisoner is held in confinement by authority of the officer who reviews the proceedings of the court awarding sentence. The commander of the guard will state in his report, in the proper place, the name of the officer by whom the prisoner was originally confined.

243. Enlisted men against whom charges have been preferred will be designated as "awaiting trial"; enlisted men who have been tried will, prior to the promulgation of the result, be designated as "awaiting result of trial"; enlisted men serving sentences of confinement, not involving dishonorable discharge, will be designated as "garrison prisoners." Persons sentenced to dismissal or dishonorable discharge and to terms of confinement at military posts or elsewhere will be designated as "general prisoners." (A. R. 928.)

244. The sentences of prisoners will be read to them when the order promulgating the same is received. The officer of the guard, or the officer of the day if there be no officer of the guard, will read them unless the commanding officer shall direct otherwise.

245. When the date for the commencement of a term of confinement imposed by sentence of a court-martial is not expressly fixed by sentence, the term of confinement begins on the date of the order promulgating it. The sentence is continuous until the term expires, except when the person sentenced is absent without authority. (A. R. 969.)

246. When soldiers awaiting trial or the result of trial, or undergoing sentence, commit offenses for which they are tried, the second sentence will be executed upon the expiration of the first.

247. Prisoners awaiting trial by, or undergoing sentence of, a general court-martial, and those confined for serious offenses,

will be kept apart, when practicable, from those confined by sentence of an inferior court, or for minor offenses. Enlisted men in confinement for minor offenses, or awaiting trial or the result of trial for the same, will ordinarily be sent to work under charge of unarmed overseers instead of armed sentinels and will be required to attend drills unless the commanding officer shall direct otherwise.

248. Prisoners, other than general prisoners, will be furnished with food from their respective companies or from the organizations to which they may be temporarily attached.

The food of prisoners will, when practicable, be sent to their places of confinement, but post commanders may arrange to send the prisoners, under proper guard, to their messes for meals.

When there is no special mess for general prsioners, they will be attached for rations to companies.

Enlisted men bringing meals for the prisoners will not be allowed to enter the prison room. (See par. 289.)

249. With the exception of those specially designated by the commanding officer, no prisoners will be allowed to leave the guardhouse unless under charge of a sentinel and passed by an officer or noncommissioned officer of the guard. The commanding officer may authorize certain garrison prisoners and paroled general prisoners to leave the guardhouse, not under the charge of a sentinel, for the purpose of working outside under such surveillance and restrictions as he may impose.

250. Prisoners reporting themselves sick at sick call, or at the time designated by the commanding officer, will be sent to the hospital under charge of proper guard, with a sick report kept for the purpose. The recommendation of the surgeon will be entered in the guard report.

251. The security of sick prisoners in the hospital devolves upon the post surgeon, who will, if necessary, apply to the post commander for a guard.

252. Prisoners will be paraded with the guard only when directed by the commanding officer or the officer of the day.

253. A prisoner under charge of a sentinel will not salute an officer.

254. All serviceable clothing which belongs to a prisoner, and his blankets, will accompany him to the post designated for his confinement, and will be fully itemized on the clothing list

sent to that post. The guard in charge of the prisoner during transfer will be furnished with a duplicate of this list, and will be held responsible for the delivery of all articles itemized therein with the prisoner. At least one serviceable woolen blanket will be sent with every such prisoner so transferred. (A. R. 939.)

255. When mattresses are not supplied, each prisoner in the guardhouse will be allowed a bed sack and 30 pounds of straw per month for bedding. So far as practicable iron bunks will be furnished to all prisoners in post guardhouses and prison rooms. (A. R. 1084.)

256. If the number of prisoners, including general prisoners, confined at a post justifies it, the commanding officer will detail a commissioned officer as "officer in charge of prisoners." At posts where the average number of prisoners continually in confinement is less than 12, the detail of an officer in charge of prisoners will not be made.

Guarding Prisoners.

299. The sentinel at the post of the guard has charge of the prisoners except when they have been turned over to the prisoner guard or overseers. (Pars. 247 and 300 to 304.)

(a) He will allow none to escape.

(b) He will allow none to cross his post leaving the guardhouse except when passed by an officer or noncommissioned officer of the guard.

(c) He will allow no one to communicate with prisoners without permission from proper authority.

(d) He will promptly report to the corporal of the guard any suspicious noise made by the prisoners.

(e) He will be prepared to tell, whenever asked, how many prisoners are in the guardhouse and how many are out at work or elsewhere.

Whenever prisoners are brought to his post returning from work or elsewhere, he will halt them and call the corporal of the guard, notifying him of the number of prisoners returning. Thus: "Corporal of the guard, (so many) prisoners."

He will not allow prisoners to pass into the guardhouse until the corporal of the guard has responded to the call and ordered him to do so.

300. Whenever practicable, special guards will be detailed for the particular duty of guarding working parties composed of such prisoners as can not be placed under overseers. (Par. 247.)

301. The prisoner guard and overseers will be commanded by the police officer; if there be no police officer, then by the officer of the day.

302. The provost sergeant is sergeant of the prisoner guard and overseers, and as such receives orders from the commanding officer and the commander of the prisoner guard only.

303. Details for prisoner guard are marched to the guardhouse and mounted by being inspected by the commander of the main guard, who determines whether all of the men are in proper condition to perform their duties and whether their arms and equipments are in proper condition, and rejects any men found unfit.

304. When prisoners have been turned over to the prisoner guard or overseers, such guards or overseers are responsible for them under their commander, and all responsibility and control of the main guard ceases until they are returned to the main guard. (Par. 306.)

305. If a prisoner attempts to escape, the sentinel will call "Halt." If he fails to halt when the sentinel has once repeated his call, and if there be no other possible means of preventing his escape, the sentinel will fire upon him.

The following will more fully explain the important duties of a sentinel in this connection:

(Circular.)

WAR DEPARTMENT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL'S OFFICE,
Washington, November 1, 1887.

By direction of the Secretary of War, the following is published for the information of the Army:

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT, EASTERN DISTRICT OF MICHIGAN, AUGUST 1, 1887.

THE UNITED STATES V. JAMES CLARK.

The circuit court has jurisdiction of a homicide committed by one soldier upon another within a military reservation of the United States.

If a homicide be committed by a military guard without malice and in the performance of his supposed duty as a soldier, such homicide is

excusable, unless it was manifestly beyond the scope of his authority or was such that a man of ordinary sense and understanding would know that it was illegal.

It seems that the sergeant of the guard has a right to shoot a military convict if there be no other possible means of preventing his escape.

The common-law distinction between felonies and misdemeanors has no application to military offenses.

While the finding of a court of inquiry acquitting the prisoner of all blame is not a legal bar to a prosecution, it is entitled to weight as an expression of the views of the military court of the necessity of using a musket to prevent the escape of the deceased.

* * * * * *

By order of the Secretary of War:

R. C. DRUM, *Adjutant General.*

The following is taken from Circular No. 3, of 1883, from Headquarters Department of the Columbia:

VANCOUVER BARRACKS, W. T., *April 20, 1883.*

To the ASSISTANT ADJUTANT GENERAL,
Department of the Columbia.

SIR:

* * * * * * *

A sentinel is placed as guard over prisoners to prevent their escape, and, for this purpose, he is furnished a musket, with ammunition. To prevent escape is his first and most important duty.

* * * * * * *

I suppose the law to be this: That a sentinel shall not use more force or violence to prevent the escape of a prisoner than is necessary to effect that object, but if the prisoner, after being ordered to halt, continues his flight the sentinel may main or even kill him, and it is his duty to do so.

A sentinel who allows a prisoner to escape without firing upon him, and firing to hit him, is, in my judgment, guilty of a most serious military offense, for which he should and would be severely punished by a general court-martial.

* * * * * * *

(Signed) HENRY A. MORROW,
Colonel Twenty-first Infantry, Commanding Post.

[Third indorsement.]

OFFICE JUDGE ADVOCATE,
MILITARY DIVISION OF THE PACIFIC,
May 11, 1883.

Respectfully returned to the assistant adjutant general, Military Division of the Pacific, concurring fully in the views expressed by Col. Morrow. I was not aware that such a view had ever been questioned. That the period is a time of peace does not affect the authority and duty of the sentinel or guard to fire upon the escaping prisoner, if this escape can not otherwise be prevented. He should, or course, attempt to stop the prisoner before firing by ordering him to halt, and will properly warn him by the words "Halt, or I fire," or words to such effect.

W. WINTHROP, *Judge Advocate.*

[Fourth indorsement.]

HEADQUARTERS MILITARY DIVISION OF THE PACIFIC,
May 11, 1883.

Respectfully returned to the commanding general, Department of the Columbia, approving the opinion of the commanding officer, Twenty-first Infantry, and of the judge advocate of the division, in respect to the duty of and method to be adopted by sentinels in preventing prisoners from escaping.

* * * * * * *

By command of Maj. Gen. Schofield:

J. C. KELTON,
Assistant Adjutant General.

See also Circular No. 53, A. G. O., December 22, 1900.

306. On approaching the post of the sentinel at the guardhouse, a sentinel of the prisoner guard or an overseer in charge of prisoners will halt them and call, "No. 1, (so many) prisoners." He will not allow them to cross the post of the sentinel until so directed by the corporal of the guard.

307. Members of the prisoner guard and overseers placed over prisoners for work will receive specific and explicit instructions covering the required work; they will be held strictly responsible that the prisoners under their charge properly and satisfactorily perform the designated work.

Flags.

337. The garrison, post, and storm flags are national flags and shall be of bunting. The union of each is as described in paragraph 216, Army Regulations, and shall be of the following proportions: Width, seven-thirteenth of the hoist of the flag; length, seventy-six one-hundredths of the hoist of the flag.

The garrison flag will have 38 feet fly and 20 feet hoist. It will be furnished only to posts designated in orders from time to time from the War Department, and will be hoisted only on holidays and important occasions.

The post flag will have 19 feet fly and 10 feet hoist. It will be furnished for all garrison posts and will be hoisted in pleasant weather.

The storm flag will have 9 feet 6 inches fly and 5 feet hoist. It will be furnished for all occupied posts for use in stormy and windy weather. It will also be furnished to national cemeteries. (A. R. 223.)

338. At every military post or station the flag will be hoisted at the sounding of the first note of the reveille, or of the first note of the march, if a march be played before the reveille. The flag will be lowered at the sounding of the last note of the retreat, and while the flag is being lowered the band will play "The Star-Spangled Banner," or, if there be no band present, the field music will sound "to the color." When "to the color" is sounded by the field music while the flag is being lowered the same respect will be observed as when "The Star-Spangled Banner" is played by the band, and in either case officers and enlisted men out of ranks will face toward the flag, stand at attention, and render the prescribed salute at the last note of the music. (A. R. 437.)

The lowering of the flag will be regulated as to be completed at the last note of "The Star-Spangled Banner" or "to the color."

339. The national flag will be displayed at a seacoast or lake fort at the beginning of and during an action in which a fort may be engaged, whether by day or by night. (A. R. 437.)

340. The national flag will always be displayed at the time of firing a salute. (A. R. 397.)

341. The flag of a military post will not be dipped by way of salute or compliment. (A. R. 405.)

342. On the death of an officer at a military post the flag is displayed at halfstaff and so remains, between reveille and retreat, until the last salvo or volley is fired over the grave; or, if the remains are not interred at the post, until they are removed therefrom. (A. R. 422.)

343. During the funeral of an enlisted man at a military post the flag is displayed at halfstaff. It is hoisted to the top after the final volley or gun is fired, or after the remains are taken from the post. The same honors are paid on the occasion of the funeral of a retired enlisted man. (A. R. 423.)

344. When practicable, a detail consisting of a noncommissioned officer and two privates of the guard will raise or lower the flag. This detail wears side arms, or if the special equipments do not include side arms, then belts only.

The noncommissioned officer, carrying the flag, forms the detail in line, takes his post in the center and marches it to the staff. The flag is then securely attached to the halyards and rapidly hoisted. The halyards are then securely fastened to the cleat on the staff and the detail marched to the guardhouse.

345. When the flag is to be lowered, the halyards are loosened from the staff and made perfectly free. At retreat the flag is lowered at the last note of retreat. It is then neatly folded and the halyards made fast. The detail is then re-formed and marched to the guardhouse, where the flag is turned over to the commander of the guard.

The flag should never be allowed to touch the ground and should always be hoisted or lowered from the leeward side of the staff, the halyards being held by two persons.

Reveille and Retreat Gun.

346. The morning and evening gun will be fired by a detachment of the guard, consisting, when practicable, of a corporal and two privates. The morning gun is fired at the first note of reveille, or, if marches be played before the reveille, it is fired at the beginning of the first march. The retreat gun is fired at the last note of retreat.

The corporal marches the detachment to and from the piece, which is fired, sponged out, and secured under his direction.

Guard Mounting.

347. Guard mounting will be formal or informal as the commanding officer may direct. It will be held as prescribed in the drill regulations of the arm of the service to which the guard belongs. If none is prescribed, then as for infantry. In case the guard is composed wholly of mounted organizations, guard mounting may be held mounted.

348. When infantry and mounted troops dismounted are united for guard mounting, all details form as prescribed for infantry.

Formal Guard Mounting for Infantry.

349. Formal guard mounting will ordinarily be held only in posts or camps where a band is present.

350. At the assembly, the men designated for the guard fall in on their company parade grounds as prescribed in paragraph 106, I. D. R. The first sergeant then verifies the detail, inspects it, replaces any man unfit to go on guard, turns the detail over to the senior noncommissioned officer, and retires. The band takes its place on the parade ground so that the left of its front rank shall be 12 paces to the right of the front rank of the guard when the latter is formed.

351. At adjutant's call, the adjutant, dismounted, and the sergeant major on his left, marches to the parade ground. The adjutant halts and takes post so as to be 12 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed; the sergeant major continues on, moves by the left flank and takes post facing to the left, 12 paces to the left of the front rank of the band; the band plays in quick or double time; the details are marched to the parade ground by the senior noncommissioned officers; the detail that arrives first is marched to the line so that, upon halting, the breast of the front rank men shall be near to and opposite the left arm of the sergeant major; the commander of the detail halts his detail, places himself in front of and facing the sergeant major, at a distance equal to or a little greater than the front of his detail, and commands: 1. **Right**, 2. **DRESS**. The detail dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and its commander, the right front rank man placing his breast against the left arm of the ser-

geant major; the noncommissioned officers take post two paces in rear of the rear rank of the detail. The detail aligned, the commander of the detail commands: **FRONT**, salutes, and then reports, "**The detail is correct**," or "**(So many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent**"; the sergeant major returns the salute with the right hand after the report is made. The commander then passes by the right of the guard and takes post in the line of noncommissioned officers in rear of the right file of his detail.

Should there be more than one detail, it is formed in like manner on the left of the one preceding. The privates, noncommissioned officers, and commander of each detail dress on those of the preceding details in the same rank or line. Each detail commander closes the rear rank to the right and fills blank files as far as practicable with the men from his front rank.

Should the guard from a company not include a noncommissioned officer, one will be detailed to perform the duties of commander of the detail. In this case the commander of the detail, after reporting to the sergeant major, passes around the right flank between the guard and the band and retires.

352. When the last detail has formed, the sergeant major takes a side step to the right, draws sword, verifies the detail, takes post two paces to the right and two paces to the front of the guard, facing to the left, causes the guard to count off, completes the left squad, if necessary, as in the School of the Company, and if there be more than three squads, divides the guard into two platoons, again takes post as described above and commands: 1. **Open ranks**, 2. **MARCH**.

At the command march, the rear rank and file closers march backward four steps, halt, and dress to the right. The sergeant major aligns the ranks and file closers and again taking post as described above, commands: **FRONT**, moves parallel to the front rank until opposite the center, turns to the right, halts midway to the adjutant, salutes and reports: "**Sir, the details are correct**," or "**Sir, (so many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent**"; the adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: **Take your post**, and then draws saber; the sergeant major faces about, approaches to within two paces of the center of the front rank, turns to the right, moves three paces beyond the left of the front rank, turns to the left, halts on the line of the front rank, faces about, and brings his sword to the

order. When the sergeant major has reported the officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front three paces in front of the center of the guard, and draws saber.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers**, 2. **Front and center**, 3. **MARCH**.

At the command **center**, the officers carry saber. At the command **march**, the officer advances and halts three paces from the adjutant, remaining at the carry; the noncommissioned officers pass by the flanks, along the front, and form in order of rank from right to left, three paces in rear of the officer, remaining at the right shoulder; if there is no officer of the guard the noncommissioned officers halt on a line three paces from the adjutant; the adjutant then assigns the officers and noncommissioned officers according to rank, as follows: **Commander of the guard, leader of first platoon, leader of second platoon, right guide of first platoon, left guide of second platoon, left guide of first platoon, right guide of second platoon**, and **file closers**, or, if the guard is not divided into platoons: **Commander of the guard, right guide, left guide**, and **file closers**.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers**, 2. **POSTS**, 3. **MARCH**.

At the command **posts**, all, except the officer commanding the guard, face about. At the command **march**, they take the posts prescribed in the school of the company with open ranks. The adjutant directs: **Inspect your guard, sir**; at which the officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: **Prepare for inspection**, returns saber and inspects the guard.

During the inspection the band plays; the adjutant returns saber, observes the general condition of the guard, and falls out any man who is unfit for guard duty or does not present a creditable appearance. Substitutes will report to the commander of the guard at the guardhouse.

353. The adjutant, when so directed, selects orderlies and color sentinels, as prescribed in paragraphs 140 and 141, and notifies the commander of the guard of his selection.

354. If there be a junior officer of the guard he takes post at the same time as the senior, facing to the front, three paces in front of the center of the first platoon; in going to the front and center he follows and takes position on the left of the senior and is assigned as leader of the first platoon; he may be di-

rected by the commander of the guard to assist in inspecting the guard.

If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard. A noncommissioned officer commanding the guard takes post on the right of the right guide when the guard is in line, and takes the post of the officer of the guard when in column or passing in review.

355. The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about thirty paces in front of and facing the center of the guard and draws saber; the new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the guard, about thirty paces from the adjutant; the old officer of the day takes post three paces to the right of and one pace to the rear of the new officer of the day; the officer of the guard takes post three paces in front of its center, draws saber with the adjutant, and comes to the order; thereafter he takes the same relative position as a captain of a company.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Parade**, 2. **REST**, 3. **SOUND OFF**, and comes to the order and parade rest.

The band, playing, passes in front of the officer of the guard to the left of the line and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing.

The adjutant then comes to attention, carries saber and commands: 1. **Guard**, 2. **ATTENTION**, 3. **Close ranks**, 4. **MARCH**.

The ranks are opened and closed as in paragraph 745, I. D. R.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Present**, 2. **ARMS**, faces toward the new officer of the day, salutes, and then reports: **Sir, the guard is formed.** The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: **March the guard in review, sir.**

The adjutant carries saber, faces about, brings the guard to an order, and commands: 1. **At trail, platoons (or guard) right**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**.

The platoons execute the movement; the band turns to the right and places itself 12 paces in front of the first platoon.

The adjutant places himself six paces from the flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant major six paces from the left flank of the second platoon.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Pass in review**, 2. **FORWARD**, 3. **MARCH**.

The guard marches in quick time past the officer of the day, according to the principles of review, and is brought to eyes

right at the proper time by the commander of the guard; the adjutant, commander of the guard, leaders of platoons, sergeant major, and drum major salute.

The band, having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left of the column, places itself opposite and facing him, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The field music detaches itself from the band when the latter turns out of the column, and, remaining in front of the guard, commences to play when the band ceases.

Having passed 12 paces beyond the officer of the day, the adjutant halts; the sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and one pace to his left; they then return saber, salute, and retire; the commander of the guard then commands: 1. **Platoons, right by squads**, 2. **MARCH**, and marches the guard to its post.

The officers of the day face toward each other and salute; the old officer of the day turns over the orders to the new officer of the day.

While the band is sounding off, and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded. They take this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resume the attention with him, again take the parade rest at the first note of the march in review, and resume attention as the head of the column approaches.

The new officer of the day returns the salute of the commander of the guard and the adjutant, making one salute with the hand.

356. If the guard be not divided into platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. **At trail, guard right**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**, and it passes in review as above; the commander of the guard is three paces in front of its center; the adjutant places himself six paces from the left flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant covers the adjutant on a line with the front rank.

Informal Guard Mounting for Infantry.

357. Informal guard mounting will be held on the parade ground of the organization from which the guard is detailed. If it is detailed from more than one organization, then at such place as the commanding officer may direct.

358. At assembly, the detail for guard falls in on the company parade ground. The first sergeant verifies the detail, inspects their dress and general appearance, and replaces any man unfit to march on guard. He then turns the detail over to the commander of the guard and retires.

359. At adjutant's call, the officer of the day takes his place 15 paces in front of the center of the guard and commands: 1. **Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,** 2. **Front and center,** 3. **MARCH**; whereupon the officers and noncommissioned officers take their positions, are assigned and sent to their posts as prescribed in formal guard mounting. (Par. 352.)

The officer of the day will then inspect the guard with especial reference for its fitness for the duty for which it is detailed and will select, as prescribed in paragraphs 140 and 141, the necessary orderlies and color sentinels. The men found unfit for guard will be returned to quarters and will be replaced by others found to be suitable, if available in the company. If none are available in the company, the fact will be reported to the adjutant immediately after guard mounting.

When the inspection shall have been completed, the officer of the day resumes his position and directs the commander of the guard to march the guard to its post.

Relieving the Old Guard.

360. As the new guard approaches the guardhouse, the old guard is formed in line, with its field music three paces to its right; and, when the field music at the head of the new guard arrives opposite its left, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. **Eyes, RIGHT**; the commander of the old guard commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **ARMS**; commanders of both guards salute. The new guard marches in quick time past the old guard.

When the commander of the new guard is opposite the field music of the old guard, he commands: **FRONT**; the commander of the old guard commands: 1. **Order,** 2. **ARMS,** as soon as the new guard shall have cleared the old guard.

The field music having marched three paces beyond the field music of the old guard, changes direction to the right, and, followed by the guard, changes direction to the left when on a line with the old guard; the changes of direction are without com-

mand. The commander of the guard halts on the line of the front rank of the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, and, when its rear approaches, forms it in line to the left, establishes the left guide three paces to the right of the field music of the old guard, and on a line with the front rank, and then dresses his guard to the left; the field music of the new guard is three paces to the right of its front rank.

361. The new guard being dressed the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its center, commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **ARMS,** resumes his front, salutes, carries saber, faces his guard and commands: 1. **Order,** 2. **ARMS.**

Should a guard be commanded by a noncommissioned officer, he stands on the right or left of the front rank, according as he commands the old or new guard, and executes the rifle salute.

362. After the new guard arrives at its post and has saluted the old guard, each guard is presented by its commander to its officer of the day; if there be but one officer of the day present, or if one officer acts in the capacity of old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

363. If other persons entitled to a salute approach, each commander of the guard will bring his own guard to attention if not already at attention. The senior commander of the two guards will then command: "**1. Old and new guards, 2. Present, 3. Arms.**"

The junior will salute at the command "**Present Arms**" given by the senior. After the salute has been acknowledged, the senior bring both guards to the order.

364. After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day, each guard is brought to an order by its commander; the commander of the new guard then directs the orderly or orderlies to fall out and report and causes bayonets to be fixed if so ordered by the commanding officer; bayonets will not then be unfixed during the tour except in route marches while the guard is actually marching or when specially directed by the commanding officer.

The commander of the new guard then falls out members of the guard for detached posts, placing them under charge of the proper noncommissioned officers, divides the guard into three reliefs, first, second, and third, from right to left, and directs a list of the guard to be made by reliefs. When the guard consists of troops of different arms combined, the men are

assigned to reliefs so as to insure a fair division of duty under rules prescribed by the commanding officer.

365. The sentinels and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard, the two guards standing at ease or at rest while these changes are being made. The commander of the old transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions, and information concerning the guard and its duties. The commander of the new guard then taken possession of the guard house and verifies the articles in charge of the guard.

366. If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard the portion of the old guard at the guard house may be marched off and dismissed. In such a case the remaining detachment or detachments of the old guard will be inspected by the commander of the new guard when they reach the guard house. He will direct the senior noncommissioned officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them in the prescribed manner.

367. In bad weather, at night, after long marches, or when the guard is very small, the field music may be dispensed with.

COMBAT.

The field of battle is the final test of the instruction, discipline, and efficiency of the fighting force of any army.

In the war in Manchuria, between Russia and Japan, the armies were of great size and the fighting sometimes extended along a front of from 30 to 50 miles, and sometimes lasted for many days. This will be the case in any great war of the future.

As far as any individual soldier is concerned, the greatest battle will consist only of a number of small fights mixed in with considerable hard marching, both by day and by night, short rations, heavy outpost duty, and other hardships.

The one requisite necessary to win the battle is intelligent team work. The army is handled just like a football team. A part is on the first line facing the enemy. Another part, like the half backs, is held back as supports. Another part, like the full backs, is held as a reserve. Each unit, like each player, has a certain duty to perform. When the signal is given all work together—all play the game—team work. The players consist of all branches of the service.

The same rule holds true down to the smallest unit and even to the individual enlisted man. Each regiment is a team composed of three players—each a battalion. Each battalion is a team of four players—each a company. In the same manner each company is a team of two or more platoons; each platoon a team of two or more squads; and last but not least, each squad is a team of eight players.

The one question that always presents itself on the battlefield every minute of the time to every person, whether he be a general or a private, is "**What play has my team captain ordered, and how best may I act so as to work in conjunction with the other players to bring about the desired result?**"—team play.

To the Infantry private this means—

First. **Prompt and loyal obedience to the squad leader.** Every squad always has a team captain. If the squad leader is killed or disabled, another player previously designated takes his place. If no one was designated, then the private with the longest service takes command. When the squad leader gives the command for a certain play, don't stop to think if the play is a good one, but do your very best to carry out the play as ordered. A poor play in which every player enters with his whole heart (team work) will often win, while, on the other hand, the best play in which some of the players are skulkers and shirkers will probably fail.

Second. **Never lose touch with your squad.** Every individual, as well as every unit, should always be acting under the control of some higher commander. This is necessary if there is to be any unity of action. Therefore if you lose your squad or it becomes broken up, join the first squad you can find and obey your new squad leader as loyally and as cheerfully as you did your own.

Infantry approaches the battlefield in columns of squads. While yet several miles from the enemy's position the troops may come under artillery fire. On green men, entering upon their fight, the sound of the projectile whistling through the air, the noise, flash, and smoke on the burst of the shrapnel, and the hum of the various pieces thereafter all produce a very terrifying effect, but old soldiers soon learn to pay little attention to this, as the danger is not great.

As the troops advance the column breaks up into smaller columns which form on an irregular line with more or less interval between. As the advance continues each column breaks up into smaller columns until, finally, a line of skirmishers is formed.

Firing is delayed as long as possible for three reasons, viz: (*a*) At the extreme ranges little damage can be done on the enemy, and ineffective firing always encourages him; (*b*) halting to fire delays the advance, and the great object to be accomplished is to close in on the enemy where you can meet him on better terms; (*c*) plenty of ammunition will be required at the decisive stage of the fight, and it is very difficult to send extra ammunition up to the firing line. **Therefore never fire until or-**

dered to do so, and then never fire more than the number of rounds designated. Never fire after the command "cease firing" is given.

Soon, however, it will be necessary to halt and open fire on the enemy in order to cause him some loss, to make his riflemen keep down in their trenches, and to make them fire wildly. It is probable that at this time and until you arrive much closer you will not see any of the enemy to fire at. You may not even see any trenches nor know just where the enemy is. Your higher officers, however, with their field glasses and the messages they receive, will know. Each company will be assigned a certain front to cover with its fire. **Therefore be careful to fix your sights at the designated range and fire only at the designated object.** This means team work in firing, which is one of the most important elements of success.

The firing line advances from position to position by means of rushes. At long range the entire line may rush forward at the same time, but as the range decreases one part of the line rushes forward while the remainder keeps up a hot fire on the enemy. The number taking part in each rush decreases as the fire of the enemy becomes warmer, until perhaps only one squad, or even less, rushes or crawls forward at a time, protected by the fire of the rest of the company. The distance covered by each rush also becomes less and less. After any rush no part of the line again advances until the rest of the line is up. **In making a rush, the leader of the unit gives the signal and leads the way. The rest follow. No attempt is made to keep a line, but each man rushes forward at a run, seeking only to reach the new halting position as quickly and with as little exposure as possible.** When halted, the skirmishers need not be in a perfect line, but every advantage should be taken of the ground for concealment and protection. It is necessary only that no man or group of men should interfere with the fire of other parts of the firing line.

The noise on the firing line will be great. Leaders will be disabled and new men will take their places. Reinforcements coming up will cause units to become mixed. To the green man everything may appear to be in confusion, but this is not so. This is war as it really is. **If you have lost your squad or your squad leader, join the leader nearest to you.** This is the way the game is played.

As long as the fight lasts every available rifleman must be kept in the firing line. The first and last consideration is to win the battle. **Therefore, under no circumstances will any soldier be permitted to go to the rear, either for ammunition or to assist the wounded.**

If the attacking force can no longer advance, it is much safer to throw up hasty intrenchments and await the arrival of reinforcements or darkness than it is to retreat. Retreating troops are the one that suffer the greatest. This lesson is taught by every great war, particularly the recent war between Russia and Japan. **Therefore, always remember that the safest thing to do is to stick to firing line.**

Troops on the firing line, when not actually engaged in firing at the enemy, busy themselves throwing up shelter trenches. It only requires a few minutes to construct a trench that gives great protection. **Therefore, never get separated from your intrenching tool.**

Concealment is no less important than protection. Therefore, when conditions permit, as is generally the case when on the defensive, every effort should be made to hide intrenchments by the use of sod, grass, weeds, bushes, etc.

In making an attack, the infantry is always supported when possible by its own artillery, which continues to fire over its head until the infantry arrives very close to the enemy's trenches. This fire is helping you a great deal by keeping down the fire of the enemy's infantry and artillery. Therefore, don't think you are being fired into by your own artillery because you hear their shells and shrapnel singing through the air or bursting a short distance in your front, but rather be thankful you are receiving their help up to the very last minute.

In the last rush which carriers the enemy's position there is always much mixing of units. The firing line does not continue rushing madly as individuals after the enemy, but halts and fires on him until he gets out of good range. The pursuit is taken up by formed troops held in reserve or by the firing line only after its units are again gotten together.

As the fighting often lasts all day, and great suffering is caused from thirst, **don't throw away your canteen when the fight commences.** It may also be impossible to get rations up to the line during the night. **Therefore it is advisable to hold onto at least one ration.**

As the recent war in Manchuria has shown the possibility of hand-to-hand fighting, especially at night, each soldier should be schooled in the use of the bayonet.

The following has particular reference to the duties of platoon and squad leaders and to the team work of the platoon in combat:

Attacking troops must first gain fire superiority in order to reach the hostile position. By gaining fire superiority is meant making one's fire superior to that of the enemy in volume and accuracy, and it depends upon the number of rifles employed, the rate of fire, the character of the target, training and discipline, and fire direction and control. When the fire of the attackers becomes effective and superior to that of the defenders the latter are no longer able to effectively and coolly aim and fire at the former, and, as a consequence, the attackers are able to inaugurate a successful rush or advance which carries them nearer to the enemy's position.

When a trained organization has been committed to the attack, the gaining of fire superiority depends upon the way in which fire direction and fire control are exercised.

The captain directs the fire of the company. He indicates to the platoon commanders the target (enemy) which the company is to fire and advance upon, and tells each upon which part of this target he is to direct the fire of his platoon. When he desires the fire to be opened he gives the necessary commands or signals, including the range at which the sights are to be set.

When the fire fight has once started it becomes to a great extent a fight of a number of platoons. The platoon is the largest organization which can be controlled by a single leader in action. The platoon commander (lieutenant or sergeant) controls its fire in order to gain the maximum fire effect and to avoid wasting ammunition. He must try his best to make the fire of his platoon effective, to get it forward, and to support neighboring platoons in their effort to advance. At the same time he must hold himself subject to his captain's directions. He should take advantage of every chance to carry his platoon forward unless otherwise ordered. In all this he is assisted by his platoon guide (sergeant) and by his corporals.

At the commencement of an engagement the platoon commander will give the objective (part of the enemy's line or aiming point) at which his platoon is to direct its fire. Non-

commissioned officers must be sure that they see and understand the objective, and that all the men in their squads do likewise. Fire is then directed at this objective without further command until the platoon commander gives a new objective.

Men should be instructed to aim at that part of the target assigned to their platoon which corresponds with their own position in their own platoon, so that there will be no portion of the target which is not covered by fire. A portion of the enemy's line not covered by fire means that that portion is able to coolly aim and fire at their opponents.

In an engagement the voice can seldom be heard over a few feet, and the platoon commander will generally have to convey his orders by signals. A corporal may be able to shout orders to his squad, and orders may be repeated along a skirmish line by shouting. Care should be taken that orders intended for one platoon only are not thus conveyed to another platoon.

A short blast on the whistle, given by the platoon commander, means "Attention to Orders." All noncommissioned officers at once suspend firing and glance toward the platoon commander to see if the latter has any signals or orders for them. If not, they resume firing. A long blast on the whistle means "Suspend Firing." When a noncommissioned officer hears this signal from his platoon commander he should at once shout "Suspend Firing." Upon receiving a signal, the noncommissioned officer for whom it is intended should at once repeat it back, to be sure that it is correctly understood.

When a leader in command of a platoon or squad receives an order or signal to rush, he should cause his men to suspend firing and to hold themselves flat but ready for a sprinter's start. He selects the point, as far as possible with reference to cover, to which he intends to carry his unit forward. He then gives the command "RUSH," springs forward, and running at full speed about three paces ahead of his men, leads them in the rush. Arriving at the position he has selected, he throws himself prone, and the men drop on either side of him. All crawl forward to good firing positions, considering the cover also, and the leader gives the necessary orders for resuming the fire. The latter will include giving the range again, the length of the rush being subtracted from the sight setting ordered at the last position.

As a rule, rushes should be started by a unit on one flank, and should be followed in succession by the other units to the opposite flank. Each succeeding unit should halt on the line established by the unit which first rushed. When a unit is about to rush, leaders in charge of adjacent units should caution their men to be careful not to fire into the rushing unit as it bounds forward.

When one unit suspends fire for the purpose of rushing, adjacent leaders should arrange to have a portion of their men turn their fire on the target of the rushing unit, to the end that there may be no portion of the enemy's line not under fire and able to fire coolly on the rushing unit.

Rushes should be made for as long a distance as possible, due regard being had for the wind of the men and not to get beyond supporting distance of the other units. Long rushes facilitate an advance, and quickly place a skirmish line close to the enemy's position, where its fire will have more effect. An attacking line suffers less from casualties at short ranges than it does at mid range.

Every advantage should be taken to utilize the cover available. The best kind of cover is that which, while it masks the skirmishers from the sight and fire of the enemy, affords favorable conditions for firing and for readily advancing. In order to allow men to regain their wind, or should the fire of the enemy be so effective as to prevent a further advance without reinforcement, advantage may be taken to lie close in cover, or hasty fire trenches may be thrown up in order to allow the line to maintain its position. "To go back under fire is to die."

When a platoon is firing, all noncommissioned officers watch every opportunity to make the fire more effective. The platoon guide should constantly watch the men to see that they do not become excited, fire too hastily or without aim, that their sights are set at the correct range, that they are obviously firing at the designated objective, and that they assume steady firing positions and take advantage of cover. In performing these duties it may be necessary for the guide to be constantly crawling along the line. A corporal in like manner supervises his squad, firing with it when he is not actively engaged in controlling it.

Bayonets are fixed preparatory to a charge. This command is usually given by the bugle. Only one or two men in each

squad should fix their bayonets at the same time, in order that there may be no marked pause or dimunition in the fire at this critical stage of the engagement.

In order to be effective in combat, the platoon must be thoroughly trained to work as a team. Each noncommissioned officer must be conversant with the signals and commands and the proper methods for instantly putting into effect the orders of his platoon commander. Each private must be trained until he instinctively does the right thing in each phase of the action.

BREAKING CAMP AND PREPARATION FOR A MARCH.

The Evening Before the March.

When a command learns that it is to make a march on the following day, presumably starting early in the morning, certain details should be attended to the evening before.

The surplus kits should be packed, and all men should fill their canteens. There will probably be no time for either of these in the morning.

The mess sergeant should find out whether lunch or the haversack ration will be carried on the march and should attend to these details in the evening in order that the issue can be made promptly in the morning.

The commander of the guard should be given a memorandum as to what time to awaken the cooks and where their tent is. The member of the guard who does this should awaken them without noise so as not to disturb the rest of the remainder of the command.

The cooks should be instructed as to what time breakfast is to be served and what time to awaken the first sergeant.

The cooks or cook's police must cut and split all firewood for the morning before 9 p. m. There must be no chopping, talking, or rattling of pans before reveille which will disturb the rest of the command. This applies to every morning in camp.

The Morning of the March.

Cooks arise when called by the guard and start the preparation of breakfast without noise. The first sergeant is usually awakened by one of the cooks about half an hour before reveille in order that he may complete his toilet and breakfast early and be able to devote all his time to supervising the details of the morning's work. If the officers desire to be awakened before reveille they will notify the first sergeant accordingly.

Second layer, front to rear; tentage, officers' rolls, rolls of extra blankets, tools, etc. Tent pins and tools should be so packed that they will not abrade the tents or other baggage.

Third layer; blanket rolls, if carried on the wagon, should be left straight and not bent. The majority of them should be laid sideways across the load, a few of them being laid lengthwise alongside the wagon bows which should have been fitted in place as the load rises above the wagon body.

Tent poles should be tied on the sides of the wagon or placed just inside the wagon bows.

The load should then be lashed on the wagon using the rope provided with each wagon for this purpose. The rope is first tied to one of the rings on the side of the wagon body at the front, then passed over the load to the opposite side and through a ring on that side and pulled tight. In this way the rope is worked diagonally to the rear of the wagon, firmly lashing the load in place. The range particularly must be so lashed that it can not work to the rear when going up hill. The water can must be lashed in place. Do not place the rope around the ends of the bows nor tie it to the end gate rods. Finally the end of the rope is secured by being tied to one of the rings on the rear bolster standards. The wagon cover is then laid on and tied fast.

The weight of the load on the wagon should never exceed 3,000 pounds. With bad roads or poor teams it should not exceed 2,000 pounds.

Wagons in the regimental train usually march in the same order from head to rear as do the companies, but wagons which are slow, heavily laden, or which have poor teams should be placed in front.

The quartermaster sergeant and the cooks accompany the wagon on the march. But one man in addition to the driver is allowed to ride on the wagon at any one time. Only the driver should ride when ascending a hill or on heavy roads.

NOTE.—In the above arrangement for loading of wagons it is presumed that in time of peace, except in simulated campaign, an organization will utilize the wagons of the combat train to permit of the assignment of a wagon to each company. In campaign or simulated campaign, when the baggage transported (exclusive of rations) must be confined, in the case of a regiment, to the four wagons of the baggage section of the field

train, other arrangement of the load will be necessary. In such a case the general rules should be followed.

MARCHING.

The principal work of troops in the field consists of marching. Battles take place only at indefinite intervals, but marches are of daily occurrence. It is only by good marching that troops can arrive at a given point at a given time and in good condition for battle.

The rate of march depends greatly upon the condition of the roads and the weather; but the average rate for infantry is about 2½ miles per hour. This allows for a rest of ten minutes each hour. The total distance marched in a day depends not only on the rate of march, but upon the size of the command, large commands often covering only about 10 miles a day, while small commands easily cover double that distance.

In order to make the march with the greatest comfort and the least danger, it is necessary that each unit be kept well in hand. Each man is permitted and encouraged to make himself as comfortable as possible at all times, excepting only that he must not interfere with the comfort of others or with the march of the column.

Infantry generally marches in column of squads, but on narrow roads or trails column of twos or files is used. The route step is habitually used when silence is not required. In large commands, in order that the column be kept in hand, it is very necessary that each man keep his place in ranks and follow his file leader at the prescribed distance. This is one of the best tests for determining the discipline and efficiency of troops. The equipment should be carefully adjusted before starting out, and any part that is not comfortable should be rearranged at the first opportunity. The rifle is carried at will, except that the muzzle must be pointed up so as not to interfere with the other men.

Under no circumstances will any man leave the ranks without permission from his company or higher commander. If the absence is to be for more than a short while, he must be given a pass showing his name, rank, and organization, and the reason he is permitted to be absent. If sick, it is better to wait by the roadside at some comfortable place for the arrival of the

surgeon or the ambulance. In any case, the soldier keeps his rifle and equipment with him, if possible. Soldiers absent from their organization without a pass will be arrested and returned to their command for punishment.

Marches in hot weather are particularly trying. Green leaves or a damp cloth carried in the hat lessens the chance of sunstroke. The hat should have ventilators, and when not exposed to the direct rays of the sun it should be removed from the head. It is well to keep the clothing about the neck and throat open, and sometimes to turn up the shirt sleeves so as to leave the wrists free.

The canteen should always be filled before starting out. Use the water very sparingly. None at all should be drunk during the first three or four hours of the march. After that take only a few mouthfuls at a time and wash out the mouth and throat. Except possibly in very hot weather, one canteen of water should last for the entire day's march. Excessive water drinking on the march will play a man out very quickly. Old soldiers never drink when marching. A small pebble carried in the mouth keeps it moist, and, therefore, reduces thirst. Or a small piece of chocolate may occasionally be eaten. Smoking is very depressing during a march.

Canteens will not be refilled on the march without authority from an officer, as the clearest water, whether from a well, spring, or running stream, may be very impure and the source of many camp diseases. If canteens are to be refilled, it should be done by order, and a detail is generally made for this purpose.

Entering upon private property without permission, or stealing fruit, etc., from gardens and orchards, is a serious military offense, as well as a violation of the civil laws.

When a cooked meal is carried, it should not be eaten until the proper time.

A command ordinarily marches for 50 minutes and halts for 10 minutes. The first halt in a day's march is for about 15 minutes, is made after about 30 minutes' marching, and is for the express purpose of allowing the men to relieve themselves. Men who wish to do this should attend to it at once and not wait until the command is almost ready to march again.

At every halt get all the rest possible and don't spend the time wandering around or standing about. Only green recruits

do this. If the ground is dry, stretch out at full length, removing the blanket roll and belt, and get in as comfortable position as possible. The next best way is to sit down with a good back rest against a tree or a fence or some other object. Never sit down or lie down, however, on wet or damp ground. Sit on your blanket roll, or on anything else that is dry. At a halt it is very refreshing to adjust the underclothing.

MAKING CAMP.

On reaching the camp site, if the wagons do not arrive immediately in rear of the regiment, the men should be allowed to fall out and rest as soon as the arms have been stacked and the shelter tents pitched. If the blanket rolls have been carried on the wagons, then the location of the front poles of the shelter tents should be marked before they are allowed to fall out. The men will not be allowed to relieve themselves until sinks are dug. Temporary sinks may be dug with intrenching tools, if carried. A guard should be placed over the water supply at once.

On the arrival of the wagons the wagon of each company is driven to the location selected for the company kitchen and unloaded. If the blanket rolls have been carried on the wagon, the shelter tents are pitched at once.

As soon as the shelter tents are pitched the company proceeds to the remainder of the camp work in accordance with a permanent assignment similar to the following:

Two squads unload the wagon and help arrange the kitchen.

One squad pitches the officers' tents.

One squad digs the sink and pitches the sink tent.

One squad procures wood and water.

One squad is held available for details from regimental headquarters.

The officers and first sergeant supervise the work.

If a sufficient number of squads are not available for all these details, but one squad is detailed for unloading the wagon, and the officers' tents are not pitched until wood and water have been procured.

The sinks are located by the commanding officer. The detail to dig them should wait until informed of the location. An officer should inspect the sink as soon as the detail reports it as completed.

After the camp has been put in order the first sergeant makes the details from roster for kitchen police and noncommissioned officer in charge of quarters for the next day and for such guard as may be ordered for that day.

The details called for by regimental headquarters for pitching the headquarter's camp, for the quartermaster, etc., should be reported to the adjutant without delay.

The cooks pitch their tent at that end of the company street nearest the kitchen. Space must be left for this tent if the cooks are not in ranks when the company pitches tents. Unless lunch has been carried or cooked during the march, the cooks should get to work on a hot meal as soon as the range is off the wagon. The kitchen police report at the kitchen as soon as their tent is pitched. Wood and water will be required at once.

Officers should avoid keeping the men unnecessarily under arms or on their feet after a hard day's march.

When the details of making camp have been completed all men should at once care for their rifles and feet. (For details as to the care of the rifle see page 26; for the care of the feet see page 225.)

CAMP SERVICE AND DUTIES.

In camp "Reveille" is preceded by "First call," and a march played by the band or field music, and is followed immediately by "Assembly." If there is a reveille gun, it is fired at the first note of the march and is the signal for all to arise. The roll is called at the last note of assembly after reveille. At this formation men should fall in in the proper uniform—rifle and belt, service hat, olive-drab flannel shirt, service breeches, leggings, and shoes. The regimental commander may prescribe that blouses are to be worn, and will prescribe the exact uniform for all drills, parades, and other formations, as well as for men going on pass.

Immediately after reveille roll call the sergeant next in rank to the first sergeant takes command of the company and deploys it for a general police of the camp within the limits assigned to the company. Men pick up all scraps of paper and rubbish of all kinds, depositing it in the company incinerator or place designated for the purpose. The police limits of each company are usually designated as extending from head to rear of camp

within the space occupied by the company street, including the ground occupied by the tents of the company, no unassigned space being left between companies.

Immediately after breakfast men police their tents and raise walls of same. If the day is fair, all bedding should be spread on the guy ropes of the tents for several hours' airing.

At sick call all men who are sick fall in and are marched to the regimental infirmary, under charge of the noncommissioned officer in charge of quarters. The noncommissioned officer takes with him the company sick report previously filled in and signed by the company commander. The surgeon examines all those reporting and indicates their status on the sick report. This status may be "Duty" (available for all duty), "Light duty" (excused from drill and heavy fatigue), "Quarters" (patient to remain in tent or company street), and "Hospital" (patient to be sent to the hospital, accompanied by a copy of his descriptive list). The noncommissioned officer then returns to the company with all the men not marked "Hospital", and hands the sick report to the first sergeant.

At "Drill call" the company prepares for drill and falls in so that it will be completely formed at assembly, which is usually sounded 10 minutes after drill call. All men are required to attend drill except those excused by sick report and those specially excused from headquarters. The excused list should include in each company only the mess sergeant, the two cooks, one kitchen police, and men on regimental guard. During drill hours the guard to be excused should be limited to a small patrol to guard against fire and thieves in camp.

If the bedding has been aired, it should be taken in immediately after drill and placed in the tents neatly folded.

Some time during the morning, at a time designated by him, the company commander inspects the entire company camp. At this inspection the entire street should be policed, kitchen in order, and tents policed, as follows:

In permanent camp, when pyramidal, conical, or wall tents are used: Bedding folded neatly and placed on the head of the cot. (If bed sacks are used, they will be folded in three folds and the bedding placed on top.) Caps and hats on top of the bedding. Shoes under foot of cot. Surplus kit bag at side of squad leader's cot. Equipment suspended neatly from a frame arranged around the tent pole. Rifles in rack constructed around the tent pole.

In shelter-tent camp: Bedding neatly folded and placed at rear of tent, ponchos underneath. Equipment arranged on the bedding. Rifles laid on bedding except when used as tent poles.

The regimental commander prescribes the exact scheme to be followed in the police of tents.

Should there be no parade, retreat roll call is held at the same hour. This roll call is under arms and is supervised by an officer of the company. After the roll call and at the sounding of "Retreat," the officer brings the company to parade rest and keeps it in this position during the sounding of this call. At the first note of the "Star Spangled Banner" or "To the Color" the company is brought to attention, and so stands until the end of the playing. The officer then reports the result of the roll call to the adjutant or officer of the day, returns to the company, inspects the arms, and dismisses it.

At the sounding of "Call to quarters" all men will repair to their company street.

After taps has sounded all talking must cease and all lights must be extinguished, and so remain until first call for reveille.

In camp all enlisted men are prohibited from crossing the officers' street, or from visiting officers' tents, without the permission of the first sergeant, unless actually engaged in some duty requiring them to do so, or sent for by an officer.

Men are not allowed to leave camp without a pass signed by the company commander and countersigned by the regimental adjutant. The first sergeant is sometimes allowed to give men permission to leave camp from retreat to taps.

The noncommissioned officer in charge of quarters, detailed for 24 hours, goes on duty each day at reveille. He is responsible that the grounds around the company are kept in proper police; that no loud noise, disturbance, or disorder occurs in the company street; that men confined to the company street do not leave the same without proper authority. He reports men who are sick to the surgeon. He may be required to report all other details called for. He accompanies the captain in his daily inspection of the company. He will not leave the company street during his tour of duty except as provided above. In camps of short duration (a week or 10 days) the mess sergeant should relieve the noncommissioned officer in charge of quarters temporarily in order that the latter may attend drills and parades.

One or two privates are detailed daily as kitchen police. They go on duty at reveille. It is their duty to assist the cooks in the kitchen. They assist in the preparation of meals, wait on the table, wash dishes, procure water and wood, chop firewood, and keep the kitchen, mess tent, and surrounding ground policed. They are under the orders of the mess sergeant and the cooks.

Rifles need careful attention in camp. They should be cleaned and oiled daily, preferably just before retreat or parade. It is advisable for each man to have a canvas cover to keep off the dust and dampness. In a shelter-tent camp tie the rifle, muzzle up, to the pole of the tent, placing a chip of wood under the butt plate and an oily rag over (never inside) the muzzle.

Wet shoes should be filled with oats or dry sand, and set in a cool place to dry. Never dry them by a fire.

Uniforms need special care, as camp service is very hard on them. In a permanent camp every man should have two pair of breeches. The blouse will seldom be worn except at parade or retreat. One pair of breeches and the blouse should be kept neat, clean, and pressed for use on ceremonies, inspections, and when going on pass. Woolen uniforms may be cleaned and freed from spots by rubbing with a flannel rag saturated with gasoline. Cotton uniforms may be washed with water, soap, and a scrubbing brush, wrung out, and stretched, properly creased, on a flat wood surface in the sun to dry. Leggings can be similarly washed. Hats should be cleaned with gasoline, and dampened and ironed to restore their shape.

Enlisted men should be very careful to observe all the sanitary regulations of the camp. Flies are the greatest spreaders of camp disease. All fecal matter and food should be carefully guarded from them. In camps extreme precautions are taken to screen the sinks and kitchens from flies, and all enlisted men should cooperate in the effort to make these precautions successful. One fly carrying germs on his feet from the sinks to the food can start a serious and fatal epidemic in a camp. Defecating on the ground in the vicinity of camp or urinating in camp are extremely dangerous to the health of the command, and are serious military offenses. At night a urinal can is provided in each company street.

In a permanent camp cots or bed sacks are usually provided for the men to sleep on. In a shelter-tent camp beds should be

made of hay, grass, leaves, pine or spruce boughs, or pine needles, on top of which the poncho and blanket are spread, thus softening the ground and keeping the sleeper away from the cold and dampness. Neglect to prepare the bed when sleeping without cot or bed sack means a loss of sleep, and may lead to colds, bowel disorders, and rheumatism.

In wet weather tents should be ditched, and in windy or cold weather dirt may be banked around them. A place for washing the person and clothes should be arranged for in each company street, and the waste water disposed of by means of drainage or rock-filled pits. In dry weather the streets in camp should frequently be sprinkled with water to keep down the dust. This is specially necessary around the kitchen.

PATROLLING.

The designation of a patrol indicates the nature of the duty for which it is detailed, as, for example, visiting, reconnoitering, exploring, flanking, combat, harassing, pursuing, etc. An infantry patrol consists, as a rule, of from 3 to 16 men.

Reconnoitering patrols are habitually small and seek safety in concealment of flight, fighting only when their mission demands it. The most skillful reconnoissance is where patrols accomplish their mission and return without being discovered by the enemy. When resistance is expected stronger detachments are required. These cover themselves with small patrols of two to four men, the remainder acting as support.

The commander determines the number and strength of patrols and when they are to be sent out. It is a cardinal principle to send out patrols of such strength only as will accomplish the object.

The officer sending out the patrol verifies the detail, designates a second in command, and gives the necessary instruction. The orders or instructions for a patrol, or for any detachment going on reconnoissance, must state clearly where the enemy is or is supposed to be, what information is desired, what features are of special importance, the general direction to be followed, whether friendly patrols are liable to be encountered, and where messages are to be sent or the patrol is to report. Important and comprehensive instructions should be in writing, but precautions against capture of papers must be taken. An officer sending out a patrol must be certain that his orders are understood. Detailed instructions are, as a rule, avoided. When necessary the time of return is stated.

The patrol leader should be selected with care. He should have good judgment, courage, be able to read maps, make sketches, and send clear and concise messages. In addition to his ordinary equipment, he should have a map of the country, a watch, field glass, compass, whistle, message blanks, and pencils.

The leader of a patrol should carefully inspect it before starting out and see that each member is in good physical condition, has serviceable shoes, a full canteen, one ration, a first-aid packet, and that his rifle and ammunition are in good condition. He will see that the equipment is arranged so as not to rattle; that nothing bright is exposed so as to glitter in the sunlight; that nothing is taken along that will give information to the enemy should any member fall into his hands, as, for example, copies of orders, maps with position of troops marked thereon, letters, newspapers, or collar ornaments. Blanket rolls should generally be left behind, in order that the patrol may travel as light as possible.

The leader then gives his patrol information and instructions. These embrace instructions from higher authority; his detailed plans; information of the country and enemy; the countersign, if any; the point where the patrol will assemble if scattered. He will see that the men understand the prescribed signals.

It must always be remembered that it makes no difference how valuable may be the information the patrol gets, it is worthless if not sent back in time to be of service. Herein is where most patrols fail. This applies particularly to the information obtained by patrols acting as a point or flankers of advance rear and flank guards. Whenever the patrol gets any information, the leader must think whether the commanding officer would change his plans or issue new orders if he had the information. If he would, the information should be sent back at once. If the distance is great or the inhabitants are hostile, it is well to send two men with the message. These men should not travel side by side, but as a patrol of two men. If the information is very important, and the danger of capture is considerable, the message should be sent by two parties, each traveling by a different route.

A message from a patrol should always show (*a*) the place from which it is sent; (*b*) the time it is sent (date, hour, and minute); (*c*) to whom it is sent; (*d*) the message itself; (*e*) what the patrol intends doing after sending the message; (*f*) the name of the sender. Under (*d*) care must be taken to separate what has actually been seen by the patrol from information received from other sources. Care must also be taken not to exaggerate what is seen, but to report only the exact facts.

In their conduct patrols exercise the greatest vigilance to prevent discovery. No formal formation is or should be prescribed. Under the leader's guidance it moves so as to guard against surprise, usually with point and flankers. To extend the sphere of its observation, still smaller patrols (one or two men) may be sent out for short distances, communication with the leader being maintained by signals. Whatever the formation adopted, it should favor the escape of at least one man in case of surprise.

In patrols of two to five men the commander generally leads. In this formation few signals are necessary, the men simply regulating their movements by his.

In questioning civilians caution is observed not to disclose information that may be of value to the enemy. Strangers are not allowed to precede the patrol. Patrol leaders are authorized to seize telegrams and mail matter, and to arrest individuals, reporting the facts as soon as possible.

Patrols should observe everything for signs of the enemy. Even apparent trifles may be of great value. The finding of a collar ornament showing a man's regiment may enable the chief of staff to determine that the enemy has been reenforced.

Patrols should not travel on the main roads if they can observe them and at the same time make the necessary progress by moving some distance to the side of the roads.

Unless in case of attack or of great personal danger, no member of the patrol should fire on hostile troops without orders from the patrol leader. When sent out to gain information, patrols should avoid fighting unless it is absolutely necessary in order to carry out their orders.

Villages and inclosures involving danger of surprise are entered with precaution, and for brief periods only. Halts are made at points affording good view, and the country is studied in all directions, landmarks to the rear being impressed on the minds of the men so that the way back can be readily found; the leader consults his map and locates himself thereon.

When a patrol is scattered it reassembles at some place previously selected; if checked in one direction, it takes another; if cut off, it returns by a detour or forces its way through. As a last resort, it scatters so that at least one man may return with information. Patrols nearing their own lines should march at a walk unless pressed by the enemy.

Occasionally it is advisable for the leader to conceal his patrol and continue the reconnoissance with one or two companions.

Patrols far from their commands or in contact with the enemy often remain out overnight. In such cases they seek a place of concealment, proceeding thereto after nightfall or under cover.

When the enemy is encountered it is very necessary to locate his main force. Information is particularly desired of his strength, whether he has infantry, cavalry, and artillery, the route and direction of his march, or the location of his camp and line of outposts.

Dust clouds indicate moving bodies. Infantry raises a low, thick cloud; cavalry a high thin cloud; artillery and wagons a broken cloud. The kind of troops, direction of march, and approximate strength may thus sometimes be roughly estimated. If from some position a body of troops can be seen marching along in column, the exact time in minutes and seconds it requires for them to pass a certain point should be noted, together with the formation they are in, thus: Infantry, column of squads, three minutes and twelve seconds; cavalry, columns of twos at a trot, one minute and twenty seconds; wagons, 4-mule, five minutes. From this information the strength can be determined by the following rule:

Assuming that infantry in column of squads occupy half a yard per man, cavalry in column of fours 1 yard per man, and artillery and wagons in single column 20 yards per gun, caisson, or wagon, a given point would be passed in one minute by about—

175 infantry.
110 cavalry at a walk.
200 cavalry at a trot.
5 guns, caissons, or wagons.

For troops in column of twos, take one-half of the above estimate.

Patrols should always observe the country marched over, with a view to making a report on the same. The following information is always of value:

Roads.—Direction; kind, whether dirt, gravel, macadam, etc.; width, whether suitable for column of squads, etc.; border,

whether fenced with stone, barbed wire, rails, etc.; steepness in crossing hills and valleys; where they pass through defiles and along commanding heights, etc.; crossroads.

Surrounding country.—Whether generally open and passable for infantry, cavalry, and artillery, or whether broken and impassable, due to fences, woods, crops, ravines, etc.

Railroads.—Single or double track, narrow or broad gauge, tunnels, bridges, cuts, direction, stations, etc.

Bridges.—Material, wood, stone, steel, etc.; length and breadth; number and kind of piers or supports.

Rivers.—Direction; width, depth; kind of bottom, such as mud, sand, rocky, etc.; banks, steep or gentle, open or wooded; rapidity of current; variations in depth at different times as indicated by driftwood and high-water marks; islands; heights in vicinity commanding stream.

Woods.—Extent and shape; kind of trees; free from underbrush or not; clearings, roads, swamps, ravines, etc.

Telegraph lines.—Number of wires, along roads or railroads, stations, etc.

Villages.—Size, kind of houses, nature of streets, means of defense, etc.

Hills and ridges.—Whether slopes are gentle or steep; whether top is narrow or wide; whether ground is broken or smooth, wooded or clear; whether difficult or easy to cross, etc.; whether commanded by other hills.

Defiles.—Their direction, length, and width; whether surrounding heights are passable for infantry and artillery; kind of country at each opening of the defile, etc.

Ravines, ditches, etc.—Width and depth; banks, whether passable for infantry, cavalry, and wagons; whether suitable for trenches, or for movement of troops therein, etc.

In general, every soldier should be constantly on the lookout to obtain information that might be of some military value. Remember that information of the enemy and of the country is worthless unless made known to the proper officials in time to be of use.

Every soldier should be able to find his way in a strange country, should know how to use a compass, should know how to locate the North Star, should be able to travel across country, keeping a given direction, both by day and by night, and by observing landmarks he should be able to return to the starting

point either over the same route or by a more circuitous one. This can easily be learned by a little practice.

It adds a great deal to the value of a soldier if he knows how to use a map to find his way. If he knows how to make a rough sketch of the country, showing the position of roads, streams, woods, railroads, bridges, houses, villages, fields, fences, hills, etc., he has added to his value as a soldier very much indeed, because a rough sketch of a country will give more and better information at a glance than can be obtained by reading many pages of written description.

Patrolling is one of the most important duties a soldier can learn. Any enlisted man who understands thoroughly his duties as a member of a patrol will understand also most of his duties when with advance or rear guards or when on outpost duty. Patrolling can not be learned merely by reading books nor by work in the armory. Thoroughness comes only by actually going out in the country and acting as a patrol.

In carrying out this idea the following scheme is recommended:

Let 4 or more men agree to take a half day off, say some Sunday. They assemble at a certain time, at a convenient point on some country road. One man, whom we will call Captain A, acts as the director; another man, whom we will call Sergeant B, acts as patrol leader; and the others (Privates C, D, E, etc.) act as members of Sergeant B's patrol.

Assume that the company (battalion, etc.) has just made camp in this vicinity, and that the inhabitants are friendly (or hostile).

Captain A indicates to the rest of the men where the camp is situated and points out where the various sentinels are posted. (This in itself affords an opportunity for much discussion and for teaching many valuable lessons.)

Captain A then calls up Sergeant B and tells him—

(*a*) Just what information Captain A has of the enemy, and also any information of the country or of friendly troops in the vicinity that might be of service to Sergeant B.

(*b*) How many men he shall take for the patrol (this is another problem for Captain A to solve. Any men present not used as part of the patrol go along with Captain A as observers).

(*c*) How far he shall go and what country he shall cover with the patrol.

(*d*) Just what information it is particularly desired he shall obtain.

(*e*) Where he shall send his messages and when he shall return.

Example 1:

"Sergeant B, it has just been reported to me that a company of hostile infantry was in camp last night at X, about 5 miles from here on this road. Take 5 men and proceed toward X and find out whether the enemy is still there, and if not, when he left and where he went. Send messages to me here, and return by 8 o'clock this evening."

Example 2:

"Sergeant B, I think I heard the firing of field guns over in that direction a short while ago. Take 6 men and proceed to that high hill you see over there about 4 miles away. Send a message to me here when you reach there. You may go farther if you then think it advisable, but return before daylight. I desire particularly to know if there are any hostile troops in this vicinity, especially artillery. I shall send Sergeant X with 3 men to observe the country from that hill you see over there farther to the south. He will remain there till dark. Send messages to me here. If the company is not here on your return you will find a note for you underneath this rail."

Example 3:

"Sergeant B, this friendly country boy has just reported that four hostile cavalrymen stopped about half an hour ago at his father's house, which he says is about 2 miles up this road. One of the men seemed to be very sick. You will select eight men from your section and endeavor to capture these men. If they have disappeared you will reconnoiter in that vicinity until dark. This boy will accompany you as a guide. I desire particularly to learn the position, strength, and composition of any hostile troops in this vicinity. Send reports to me here. Return before daylight."

Example 4:

"Sergeant B, here is a map of the country in this vicinity on a scale of 1 inch to the mile. Here is where we are camped [indicating position on map]. I have just learned that foraging parties of the enemy are collecting supplies over here at X

[indicating point on map], which is 10 miles off in that direction [pointing across country toward X]. It is reported that this bridge over this stream [indicating same on the map], which is about 3 miles down this road [indicating road and direction on the ground], has been destroyed. You will take three men from your section and verify this report. You will also reconnoiter the stream for a distance of 1 mile both above and below the bridge for fords suitable for infantry. Messages will reach me here. Return by 8 o'clock to-night."

Sergeant B then inspects his men (for this exercise, however, the men may be in civilian clothes without arms or equipment) and gives them their instructions. The patrol is then formed and moves out exactly as it would under actual war conditions.

Captain A may halt (and assemble if desirable) the patrol at intervals in order to discuss the formation used and the movement of any members of the patrol, their route, use of cover, etc., with the reasons therefor, and compare the same with suggested modifications of the formations, etc. After the discussion, the patrol is again set in motion. Captain A may accompany any part of the patrol. From time to time he presents certain situations to some member of the patrol, being very careful to assume only such situations as might naturally occur.

Thus, take Example 1:

Captain A is with Sergeant B, who, with Private C, is marching along the road as the point of the patrol. The other members of the patrol are distributed to suit the nature of the country over which the patrol is marching. The point has just reached a ridge beyond which the country is open and cultivated for about half a mile. Beyond this the road enters a woods. Captain A now says: "Sergeant B, from this point you see two soldiers in khaki on the road there at the beginning of that cornfield about 200 yards from the woods [points out same]. They are moving in this direction. About 200 yards to the right of these and somewhat farther to their rear you see two more men moving along that rail fence."

Sergeant B now does exactly as he would do in actual war. How does he signal to his patrol? Does he assemble his men? If so, how and where? Does he send a message back to camp; and if so, by whom, and is it written or verbal? (If

written, Sergeant B actually writes it and delivers it to Private ——, with the necessary instructions. If verbal, it is actually given to Private —— with instructions.) Captain A must in this case make notes of what the message was. In either case, Private —— ceases to be a member of the patrol and joins Captain A as an observer. He should, however, at some later time be required to repeat his message to Captain A, on the assumption that he had reached camp with the same. The message, whether oral or written, should be thoroughly analyzed and discussed. Was it proper to send a message at this time? Does Sergeant B intend to remain in observation; if so, how long? (Captain A can give such information from time to time concerning the hostile patrol as Sergeant B might reasonably be supposed to learn in view of his dispositions. In order that Captain A may present natural assumptions, it is very essential that in his own mind he should, at the outset, assume a situation for the hostile forces and that he should consider himself as in command of all hostile troops. In this particular case he should assume himself to be in command of the hostile patrol, acting under certain specified orders similar to examples given, and he should conduct this patrol in his own mind in accordance with these orders, giving Sergeant B only such information as he might reasonably be expected to obtain in view of whatever action Sergeant B takes.) Will Sergeant B attempt to capture this patrol? If so, how? Will he avoid fighting and attempt to pass it unobserved; and if so, how and why?

In this manner the exercise is continued. Care must be taken not to have the patrol leader or members state what they would do, but they must actually do it. Explanations and discussions may take place later.

In a similar manner the director may inform Sergeant B (or any member of the patrol) that this hostile patrol is followed by a squad (on the assumption that it is the leading unit of an advance guard), and the exercise is then continued along these lines.

The following are examples of assumption that might be made and carried out:

(*a*) That the patrol is unexpectedly fired upon.

(*b*) That one or more of the patrol is wounded.

(*c*) That a prisoner is captured (let an observer act as prisoner).

(*d*) That a friendly inhabitant gives certain information.

(*e*) That a dust cloud is seen in the distance over the trees.

(*f*) That a column of troops can be seen marching along a distant road.

(*g*) That an abandoned camp is discovered and certain signs noted.

(*h*) That the patrol is attacked by a superior force and compelled to scatter.

There is practically no end to the number of reasonable assumptions that may be made.

Company officers may use this method of instructing noncommissioned officers in patrolling advance and rear guard duty, outposts, and in squad leading, in writing messages, in selecting positions for trenches, and in constructing and concealing same. This form of instruction is called "a tactical walk." It is very greatly used by all foreign armies. Exercises along the same general lines are conducted for field and staff officers and even general officers, and are called "tactical rides" and "strategical rides," depending upon their object.

After some proficiency has been attained as a result of these tactical walks, the greatest interest and enthusiasm can be awakened in this work by sending out two patrols the same day, one to operate against the other. Each should wear a distinctive uniform. The strength of each patrol, its starting point, route to be followed, and its orders should all be unknown to the other patrol. If blank ammunition is used, an officer should supervise its issue and carefully inspect to see that no man carries any ball cartridges. One umpire should accompany the commander of each party. Each umpire should be fully informed of the strength, orders, and route of both patrols. He must, however, carefully avoid giving suggestions or offering any information to the commander. Observers in these small maneuver problems are generally in the way and none should be permitted to be along.

These small maneuvers may be gradually developed by having one side establish an outpost or fight a delaying action, etc.

It should always be remembered that there is no hard and fast rule prescribing how a patrol of three, five, or any number of men should march. The same is equally true of advance guards, and applies also to the establishment of outposts. It is simply a question of common sense based on military knowl-

edge. Don't try to remember any diagrams in a book. Think only of what you have been ordered to do and how best you can handle your men to accomplish your mission, and at the same time save the men from any unnecessary hardships. Never use two or more men to do what one can do just as well, and don't let your men get beyond your control.

In addition to the signals prescribed in the Infantry Drill Regulations, the following should be clearly understood by the members of a patrol.

Enemy in sight in small numbers, hold rifle above the head horizontally; enemy in force, same proceeding, raising and lowering the rifle several times; take cover, a downward motion of the hand.

Other signals may be agreed upon, but they must be familiar to the men; complicated signals are avoided. Signals must be used cautiously so as not to convey information to the enemy.

ADVANCE, REAR, AND FLANK GUARDS.

Advance Guards.

The advance guard is a detachment of the main body which precedes and covers it on the march. The primary duty of an advance guard is to insure the safe and uninterrupted march of the main body. Specifically its duties are:

1. To guard against surprise and furnish information by reconnoitering.
2. To push back small parties of the enemy and prevent their observing, firing upon, or delaying the main body.
3. To check the enemy's advance in force long enough to permit the main body to prepare for action.
4. When the enemy is encountered on the defensive, to seize a good position and locate his lines, care being taken not to bring on a general engagement unless the advance guard commander is empowered to do so.
5. To remove obstacles, repair the road, and favor in every way the steady march of the column.

The strength of the advance guard will vary with the proximity of the enemy and character of the country; for a regiment it will generally consist of from two companies to a battalion, for a battalion of one company; for a company of from a squad to a platoon. The advance guard commander is responsible for the proper performance of the duties with which it is charged and for its conduct and formation.

The advance guard provides for its security and gains information by throwing out to the front and flanks smaller bodies. Each part must keep in touch with the unit from which it is sent out. An advance guard is generally divided into a reserve and a support; where it consists of less than a battalion, the reserve is generally omitted.

The support sends forward an advance party, which, in turn, sends forward a point. In small advance guards the point

precedes the advance party about 150 yards, the advance party the support about 300 yards, and the support the main body about 400 yards. Where advance guards are large enough to require a reserve these distances are increased about one-fourth, the reserve following the support, the main body following the reserve at a distance varying from 500 to 800 yards.

Unless the country to the flanks is distinctly visible from the roads for a distance of what may be said to be effective rifle fire, approximately 1,000 yards, flanking patrols of two or three men each should be sent out from the advance party, and, when in proximity of the enemy, in addition from the support. When the nature of the country is such that patrols may move across country without undue effort and fatigue these patrols should march at a distance of from 200 to 300 yards from the flank of the body from which detached. For the examination of any object, such as a wood, buildings, etc., examining patrols should be sent out from the main body. The usual method of protecting the flanks, particularly when the country is at all cut up or difficult, is to send out patrols from time to time to some point from which a good outlook can be obtained, or which will afford protection to the enemy. These patrols remain in observation until the advance guard has passed, when they rejoin the nearest subdivision, as quickly as possible working their way to that to which they belong during the halts. By sending out a succession of small patrols in this manner the flanks are protected. Should the advance party become depleted, it must be reenforced from the support.

A battalion acting as advance guard would have two companies in reserve and two in support. The support would send forward as advance party two platoons, the advance party in turn sending forward as point one squad. A company acting as advance guard would have no reserve and would send forward as advance party one platoon.

Cases may arise when the best means of covering the head and flanks of the column will be by a line of skirmishers extended at intervals of from 5 to 50 yards, as, for instance, when passing through high corn, underbrush, etc.

It must always be remembered that the principal duty of the advance guard is to secure the uninterrupted march of the main body. If the point is fired upon, it should at once deploy and endeavor to advance fighting. The flankers should assist in this

and endeavor to locate the enemy's flank should there be such resistance that advance was impossible. Each succeeding body should march promptly forward, and in turn be placed in action, with the idea of clearing the way for the advance of the main body. Should this be impossible, the commander of the entire body must determine what measures he will take.

Rear Guards.

A rear guard is a detachment detailed to protect the main body from attack in rear. In a retreat, it checks pursuit and enables the main body to increase the distance between it and the enemy and to re-form if disorganized. The general formation is that of an advance guard reversed.

Its commander should take advantage of every favorable opportunity to delay the pursuers by obstructing the road or by taking up specially favorable positions from which to force the enemy to deploy. In this latter case care must be taken not to become so closely engaged as to render withdrawal unnecessarily difficult. The position taken should be selected with reference to ease of withdrawal and ability to bring the enemy under fire at long range.

Flank Guards.

A flank guard is a detachment detailed to cover the flank of a column marching past, or across the front of, an enemy. It may be placed in position to protect the passage, or it may be so marched as to cover the passage. The object of the flank guard is to hold the enemy in check long enough to enable the main body to pass, or, like the advance guard, to enable the main body to deploy. Like all other detachments, it should be no larger than is necessary, and should not be detailed except when its protection is required.

When a flank guard consists of a regiment or less, its distance from the main body should not exceed a mile and a half. Practicable communication must exist between it and the main body. The flank guard is marched as a separate command; that is, with advance or rear guards, or both, as circumstances demand, and with patrolling on the exposed flank.

OUTPOSTS.

Troops not on the march provide for their security by outposts. The general duties of an outpost are reconnoissance, observation, and resistance.

The specific duties are:

1. To protect the main body, so that the troops may rest undisturbed.

2. In case of attack, to check the enemy long enough to enable the main body to make the necessary dispositions.

During an advance the outposts are usually detailed from the advance guard. During the retreat the outpost for the night usually forms the rear guard the next day. If the command remains in bivouac, the new outpost generally goes on duty at daybreak.

The vigilance of outpost troops must be unceasing, but they should avoid bringing on combats or unnecessarily alarming the command. Firing disturbs the rest of troops and, if frequently indulged in, ceases to be a warning.

No trumpet signals except "to arms" or "to horse" are sounded, and all unnecessary noises must be avoided.

As a rule an outpost will not exceed one-sixth the strength of a command. For a single company a few sentinels and patrols will suffice; for a larger command a more elaborate system must be devised. The troops composing the outpost are generally divided into a reserve and several supports.

At a proper distance in front of the camp of the main body a line which offers a good defensive position is selected. This is called the line of resistance, and should be so located that an advancing enemy will be held in check beyond effective rifle range in case of a small force, artillery range in case of a large force, of the main body until the latter can deploy. The reserve is stationed at some point in rear of this line, where it can be moved quickly to reinforce any point as needed. The line of resistance is divided into sections, the limits of each of

which are clearly defined. A support is assigned to each section, which are numbered from right to left, and occupies a position on or near the line, having special regard to covering avenues of approach. The position occupied should always be intrenched. The reserve and supports proceed to their respective positions by the shortest routes, providing for their own protection by sending out covering detachments.

Generally speaking, about one-half the Infantry of the advance guard should be in the supports. As each support arrives at its position it sends out observation groups, varying in size from four men to a platoon, to watch the country in the direction of the enemy. These groups are called outguards. For convenience they are classified as pickets, sentry squads, and cossack posts, and should be sufficient in number to cover the front of the section occupied by the support and connect with the neighboring supports.

A picket is a group consisting of two or more squads, ordinarily not exceeding half a company, posted in the line of outposts to cover a given sector. It furnishes patrols and one or more sentinels, sentry squads, or cossack posts for observation. Pickets are placed at the more important points in the line of outguards, such as road forks. The strength of each depends upon the number of small groups required to observe properly its sector.

A sentry squad is a squad (eight men) posted in observation at an indicated point. It posts a double sentinel in observation, the remaining men resting near by and furnishing the reliefs of sentinels. In some cases it may be required to furnish a patrol.

A cossack post consists of four men. It is an observation group similar to a sentry squad, but employs a single sentinel.

As a rule not more than one-third of the support should be on outguard duty. As soon as they are sent out to their positions the support commander selects a defensive position on the line of resistance; gives instruction for intrenching same; establishes a sentinel to watch for and transmit signals from outguards; sends out patrols to reconnoiter the country to the front of his section and, if on the flank of the line, the flank; and then proceeds to make a careful reconnoissance of the section assigned him, rectifying the position of outguards if necessary, seeing that they understand their instructions in case

of attack or when strangers approach their posts, and pointing out their lines of retreat in case they are compelled to fall back on the support.

When the outguards are established, the members of the support may stack arms and remove equipment except cartridge belts. No fires will be built or smoking permitted unless specially authorized, or no loud talking or other noise. All patrolling to the front will be done, as a rule, from the support. The support commander should locate the position of the adjacent supports and make arrangements with the commanders for the joint defense of the line of resistance. At nights all roads and trails should be carefully covered and the country to the front and between adjacent outguards well patrolled.

The line occupied by the outguards is called **the line of observation.** Outguards move to their positions providing for their own protection and so as to conceal the movement from the enemy. These positions are intrenched and are numbered from right to left in each support.

The duties of the outguard are to observe the enemy, to guard the output from surprise, and to make a preliminary resistance to the enemy's advance. The strength of the outguard will vary according to its object. When an important road which at night will afford a line of advance, or a bridge is to be covered, or when several posts are established from an outguard it should be of considerable strength, two squads or a platoon. When mere observation and alarm are all that is required four men will suffice. A squad is a good unit to use as an outguard; this will allow one double sentry post of three reliefs and one man in addition to the commander, who may be used for messenger service. The outguard should be carefully concealed.

The utmost quiet should be observed, and there should be no cooking or smoking. The intervals between outguards will depend upon the situation and the terrain. The line of observation is not necessarily continuous, but all avenues of approach must be carefully guarded. The distance of the outguard from the support likewise is governed by the terrain, but in general may be said to be from 300 to 400 yards. In thick country or at night outguards patrol along the line of observation between posts. Communication between outguards and the support is by signal and messenger, in special cases by wire. Members of the outguard retain possession of their weapons and do not remove their equipment.

Sentinels from the outguard are posted so as to avoid observation, but so that they may have a clear lookout and be able to see, if possible, by day, the sentinels of the adjacent outguards. Double sentinels are always posted near enough to each other to communicate easily in ordinary voice. Sentinels are generally on post two hours out of six. For every sentinel and every patrol there should be three reliefs, and outguards should be of a strength sufficient to allow this. The position of a sentinel should be selected with reference to observation. It may be advantageous to place a sentinel in a tree. Sentinels furnished by cossack posts or sentry squads are kept near their group. Those furnished by their pickets may be kept as far as 100 yards away.

Reliefs, visiting patrols, and inspecting officers approach sentinels from the rear.

A sentinel on the line of observation should always have the following instructions: The names of villages, streams, and prominent features in sight and where the roads lead. The number (if any) of his post, and the number of his and of the adjoining outguards; the position of the support; the line of retreat to be followed if the outguard is compelled to fall back; the position of advance detachments and whether friendly patrols are operating in front; to watch to the front and flanks without intermission and devote special attention to unusual or suspicious occurrences; if he sees indications of the enemy, to at once notify his immediate superior; in case of imminent danger, or when an attack is made, to give the alarm by firing rapidly; by day to pass in or out officers, noncommissioned officers, and detachments recognized as part of the outpost, and officers known to have authority to do so; to detain all others and notify the outguard commander; at night, when persons approach his post, to come to a ready, halt them, and notify the outguard commander; the latter challenges, ascertains their identity, and acts accordingly. When individuals fail to halt, or otherwise disobey, to fire upon them after a second warning, or soonor if they attempt to attack or escape; to require deserters to lay down their arms, and remain until a patrol is sent out to bring them in; to order deserters pursued by the enemy to drop their arms and to give an alarm; if they fail to obey they are fired upon; to require bearers of flags of truce and their escorts to halt and to face outward; to permit

them to hold no conversation and to see that they are then blindfolded and disposed of in accordance with instructions from the support commander; if they fail to obey to fire upon them; at night, to remain practically stationary, moving about for purposes of observation only; not to sit or lie down unless authorized to do so; in the daytime, to make use of natural or artificial cover and assume such positions as to give him the best field of view; to inform passing patrols of what he has seen; to carry his weapon habitually loaded and locked and at will.

Outpost patrols are divided into those which operate beyond the lines and those whose duty lies principally within the lines. The former, called reconnoitering patrols, scout in the direction of the enemy; the latter, called visiting patrols, maintain communication between the parts of the outpost and supervise the performance of duty on the line of observation. Reconnoissance should be continuous. Though scouts and detachments of cavalry remain in contact with the enemy, or at least push forward to a considerable distance, more detailed reconnoissance by infantry patrols in the foreground must not be neglected. Reconnoitering patrols are composed of at least two men and a skillful leader, who, in important cases, would be an officer. They obtain information, ascertain the presence of the enemy, or discover his approach. All patrols, when they cross the line of observation, inform the nearest sentinel of the direction in which they are to advance; on their return they similarly report what they have seen of the enemy; signals are agreed upon so that they can be recognized when returning. Any ground near the line of observation which might afford cover for troops, or for scouts or spies, and the approach to which can not be observed by sentinels, is searched frequently by patrols. Definite information concerning the enemy is reported at once. Patrols fire only in self-defense or to give the alarm. Supports on the flank of an outpost position patrol the country on the exposed flank. Visiting patrols and reliefs should not march in the open, and thereby expose the position of sentinels.

During a march in the vicinity of the enemy when halts are made, special measures for protection are taken. Where the halt is for a short period, less than half an hour, the advance party and support remain at ease, the point and flankers move to positions from which they can obtain a good lookout, and

additional patrols may be sent out from advance parties and supports. Where the halt is for a period exceeding half an hour a **march outpost** should be formed. With an advance guard consisting of a battalion, 2 companies in the reserve, 2 in the support, the latter having as advance party one-half a company, a typical march outpost would be formed as follows: The advance party would send one platoon, four or five hundred yards to the right as outguard No. 1, the remaining platoon constituting outguard No. 2. A platoon from the head of the support would be sent a similar distance to the left as outguard No. 3. The balance of the support would constitute the support of the march outpost, the reserve of the advance guard acting as reserve. On signal being given to resume the march, the various units would close in, and as soon as the advance party had assembled the march would be taken up.

RIFLE TRENCHES.

Soldiers should remember that only by acting vigorously on the offensive can an army hope to gain the victory. The defensive may delay or stop the enemy, but it can never destroy him. "Troops dig because they are forced to halt; they do not halt to dig."

Trenches will frequently be constructed, without being used, and soldiers must expect this as a feature of campaigning and accept cheerfully what at times may appear as unnecessary labor.

When intrenching under fire cover is first secured in the lying position, each man scooping out a depression for his body and throwing the earth to the front. In this position no excavation can be conveniently made for the legs, but if time permits the original excavation is enlarged and deepened until it is possible to assume a sitting position, with the legs crossed and the shoulder to the parapet. In such a position a man presents a smaller target to shrapnel bullets than in the lying trench and can fire more comfortably and with less exposure than in the kneeling trench. From the sitting position the excavation may be continued until a standing trench is secured.

The accompanying plate shows some of the more common forms of trenches in profile. Figure 1 is the simplest form of standing trench. Figure 2 shows the same trench deepened in rear, so as to allow men to walk along in the rear (deeper) portion of the trench without exposing their heads above the parapet. Figure 3 shows a cover and firing trench, with a chamber in which men can find shelter when under heavy artillery fire. When the excavated earth is easily removed figure 4 shows a good profile. The enemy's infantry, as well as his artillery, will generally have great difficulty in seeing this type of trench.

The mound or bank of earth thrown up for shelter in front of a trench is called the parapet. It should be at least 30 inches thick on top, and the front should slope gradually, as shown in the plate, so that shells will tend to glance from it, rather than penetrate and explode. The top should be covered with sod, grass, or leaves, so as to hide the newly turned earth, which could be easily seen and aimed at by the enemy. There

should be no rocks, loose stones, or pebbles on top, which might be struck by the bullets, splintering and flying, thus adding greatly to the number of dangerous projectiles, and often deflecting bullets downward into the trench. A stone wall is a very dangerous thing to be behind in a fight.

The portion of the ground in rear of the parapet and between the parapet and the trench not covered by the parapet is to rest the elbows on when firing, the rifle being rested on top of the parapet.

To obtain head cover in a trench fill a gunny sack or other bag with sand or soil and place it on top of the parapet, aiming around the right-hand side of it, or dig a small lateral trench in the parapet large enough to hold the rifle. Roof it over with boards, small logs, or brush, and heap dirt on top, aiming through the small trench or resulting loophole.

Figure 5 shows the plan of a section of a rifle trench. Between the portions occupied by each squad there is often placed a mound of earth as high as the top of the parapet, and projecting back into the trench. This is called a traverse, and protects the occupants of the trench from fire from a flank. Bullets from this direction hit a traverse, instead of flying down into the trench and wounding several men.

Trenches are seldom continuous, but are made in sections placed at the most advantageous points, as shown in figure 6. A company or battalion may occupy a single section. The firing trenches have cover trenches in rear of them, where the reserves and supports can rest undisturbed by the hostile fire until they are needed in the firing trench to repel a serious assault or to take part in a counter attack. Passages consisting of deep communicating trenches facilitate passage from the cover trenches to the firing trenches when under fire. These communicating trenches are usually zigzag or traversed to prevent their being swept by hostile fire.

When troops are likely to remain in trenches for a considerable time drainage should be arranged for, and latrines and dressing stations should be constructed in trenches. Water should be brought into the trenches and holes excavated in the front wall of the trench for extra ammunition.

In digging trenches men usually work in reliefs, one relief digging while the others rest, the proportion of shovelers to pick men being about 3 to 1. If a plow can be obtained to turn the sod, it will greatly facilitate the initial work of digging.

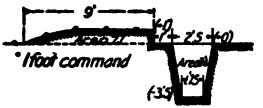


Fig. 1.

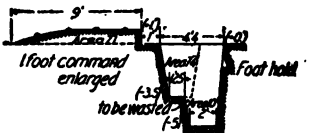


Fig. 2.

Plate V

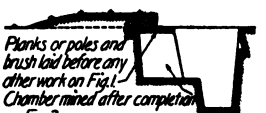


Fig. 3.

Fig. 4.

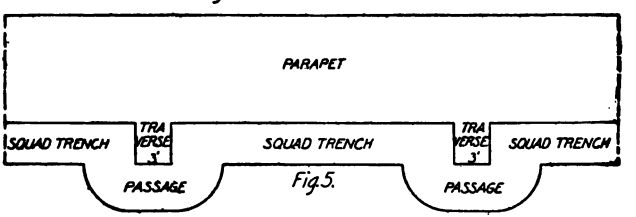
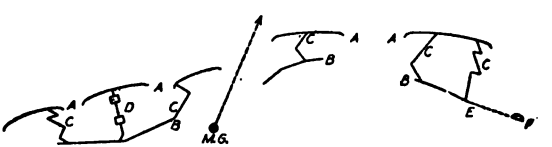


Fig. 5.



(Possible arrangement of 2 Bns. of Inf. intrenched (Regimental Reserve of 1 Bn. not shown)

A Firing trenches.

B Cover trenches.

C Communicating trench; D same traversed; E communicating way

F Closed supporting point for flank protection

M.G. Possible position for machine guns, concealed from front

Fig. 6.

MESSAGE BLANKS.

On the following page is given the form of the message blank used in the United States Army. If copies of this blank are not available, messages may be written on any paper. The general form given below adds to clearness and insures against omitting vital matter from the message, and should be adhered to as closely as possible in writing messages.

U. S. ARMY FIELD MESSAGE.	No.	Sent by.	Time.	Rec'd by.	Time.	Check.
	(These spaces for Signal Operators only.)					

Communicated by
Buzzer, Phone, Telegraph, Wireless, Lantern, Hello, Flag, Cyclist, Foot Messenger, Mounted Messenger, Motor Car, Flying Machine.
Underscore means used.

[Name of sending detachment.]

*From*_____

[Location of sending detachment.]

*At*_____

*Date*_____*Hour*_____*No*_____

*To*_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

*Received*_____

The heading "From" is filled in with the *name* of the detachment sending the information; as "Officer's Patrol, 7th Cav." Messages sent on the same day from the same source to the same person are numbered consecutively. The address is written briefly, thus: "Commanding officer, Outpost, 1st Brigade." In the signature the writer's surname only and rank are given.

This blank is four and a half by six and three-quarters inches, including the margin on the left for binding. The back is ruled in squares, the side of each square representing 100 yards on a scale of 3 inches to one mile, for use in making simple sketches explanatory of the message. It is issued by the Signal Corps in blocks of forty with duplicating sheets. The regulation envelope is three by five and one-fourth inches and is printed as follows:

U. S. ARMY FIELD MESSAGE.

*To*_____ *No*_____

(For signal operator only.)

*When sent*_____*No*_____

*Rate of speed*_____

*Name of messenger*_____

*When and by whom rec'd*_____

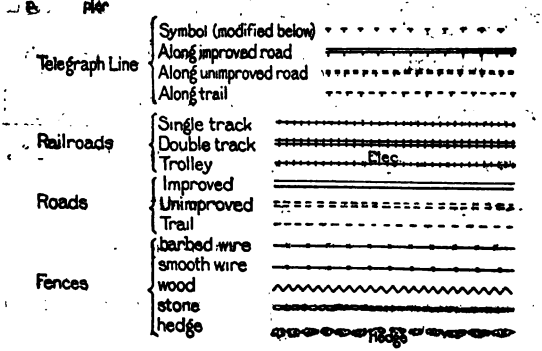
This Envelope will be Returned to Bearer.

SIMPLE SKETCHING.

Noncommissioned officers and selected privates should be able to make simple route sketches. This is particularly useful in patrolling, as thereby a patrol leader is able to give his commander a good idea of the country his patrol has traversed. Sketches should be made on a certain scale, which should be indicated on the sketch, such as 3 inches on the sketch equals 1 mile on the ground. The north should be indicated on the sketch by means of an arrow pointing in that direction. Any piece of paper may be used to make the sketch on. The back of the field-message blank is ruled and prepared for this purpose. The following abbreviations and conventional signs should be used in making such simple sketches:

The following abbreviations are authorized for use on field maps and sketches. When these words are used they must be written in full or abbreviated as shown. The abbreviations must not be used for words other than those in the table. Words not in the table are not as a rule abbreviated.

abut.	abutment	pk.	plank
B.S.	blacksmith shop	P.O.	post office
bot.	bottom	Pt.	point
Cr.	creek	Q.	quarry
cul.	culvert	q.p.	queen post
cult.	cultivated	R.	river
d.	deep	R.R.	round house
D.S.	drug store	R.R.	railroad
E.	east	S.	south
f.	fordable	s.	steel
Ft.	fort	S.H.	school house
gir.	girder	S.M.	saw mill
G.M.	grist mill	Sta.	station
G.S.	general store	st.	stone
I.	iron	str.	stream
I.	island	tres.	trestle
jc.	junction	T.G.	toll gate
kp.	king post	tr.	truss
L.	lake	W.T.	water tank
Ldg.	landing	W.W.	water works
Mt.	mountain	W.	west
N.	north	wd.	wide
n.f.	not fordable	w.	wood.
P.	pier		



Bridge

Indicate character and span by abbreviations.

Example: w.k.p. 40x20 / 10

Meaning wooden king post bridge, 40 feet long, 20 feet wide, and 10 feet above the water.

Streams

Indicate character by abbreviations.

Example: 15'wd x 8'd n.f.

Meaning a stream 15 feet wide, 8 feet deep, and not fordable.

House

Church

School house S.H.

Woods Woods

Orchards

Cultivated Land Cult.

If boundary lines are fences they are indicated as such.

Brush, crops or grass, important as cover or forage Brush, corn, grass, etc.

Cemetery

Trees, isolated

Cut and fill — Cut 10' cut 10 feet deep

Fill 10' Fill 10 feet high

For more elaborate map work the authorized conventional signs are used

SIGNALS AND CODES.

GENERAL SERVICE CODE (INTERNATIONAL MORSE CODE).

Used for all visual and sound signaling, radiotelegraphy, and on cables using siphon recorders, used in communicating with the Navy:

A	• —	S	• • •
B	— • • •	T	—
C	— • — •	U	• • —
D	— • •	V	• • • —
E	•	W	• — —
F	• • — •	X	— • • —
G	— — •	Y	— • — —
H	• • • •	Z	— — • •
I	• •	1	• — — — —
J	• — — —	2	• • — — —
K	— • —	3	• • • — —
L	• — • •	4	• • • • —
M	— —	5	• • • • •
N	— •	6	— • • • •
O	— — —	7	— — • • •
P	• — — •	8	— — — • •
Q	— — • —	9	— — — — •
R	• — •	0	— — — — —

Period	• • • • • •
Comma	• — • — • —
Interrogation	• • — — • •

THE MORE IMPORTANT CONVENTIONAL FLAG SIGNALS.

For communication between the firing line and the reserve or commander in rear. In transmission, their concealment from the enemy's view should be insured. In the absence of signal flags the headdress or other substitute may be used.

Letter of alphabet.	If signaled from the rear to the firing line.	If signaled from the firing line to the rear.
a a a	Ammunition going forward	Ammunition required.
c c c	Charge (mandatory at all times)	Am about to charge if no instructions to the contrary.
c f	Cease firing	
f	Commence firing	
s s s	Support going forward	Support needed.
g	Move forward	Preparing to move forward.
h h h	Halt	
k	Negative	Negative.
p	Affirmative	Affirmative.

WIGWAG.

Signaling by flag, torch, hand lantern, or beam of searchlight (without shutter).

1. There is one position, and there are three motions. The position is with flag or other appliance held vertically, the signalman facing directly toward the station with which it is desired to communicate. The first motion (the dot) is to the right of the sender, and will embrace an arc of 90°, starting with the vertical and returning to it, and will be made in a plane at right angles to the line connecting the two stations. The second motion (the dash) is a similar motion to the left of the sender. The third motion (front) is downward directly in front of the sender and instantly returned upward to the first position. This is used to indicate a pause or conclusion.

2. The beam of the searchlight, though ordinarily used with the shutter like a heliograph, may be used for long-distance signaling, when no shutter is suitable or available, in a similar

manner to the flag or torch, the first position being a vertical one. A movement of the beam 90° to the right of the sender indicates a dot, a similar movement to the left indicates a dash; the beam is lowered vertically for front.

3. To use the torch or hand lantern, a foot light must be employed as a point of reference to the motion. The lantern is more conveniently swung out upward to the right of the footlight for a dot, to the left for a dash, and raised vertically for front.

4. To call a station, make the call letter until acknowledged, at intervals giving the call or signal of the calling station. If the call letter of a station is unknown, wave flag until acknowledged. In using the searchlight without shutter throw the beam in a vertical position and move it through an arc of 180° in a plane at right angles to the line connecting the two stations until acknowledged. To acknowledge a call, signal "Acknowledgment (or) I understand (——— front)," followed by the call letter of the acknowledging station.

Signaling with heliograph, flash lantern, and searchlight (with shutter).

1. The first position is to turn a steady flash on the receiving station. The signals are made by short and long flashes. Use short flash for dot and a long steady flash for dash. The elements of a letter should be slightly longer than in sound signals.

2. To call a station, make the call letter until acknowledged, at intervals giving the call or signal of the calling station.

3. If the call letter of a station be unknown, signal a series of dots rapidly made until acknowledged. Each station will then turn on a steady flash and adjust. When adjustment is satisfactory to the calling station, it will cut off its flash and the calling station will proceed with its message.

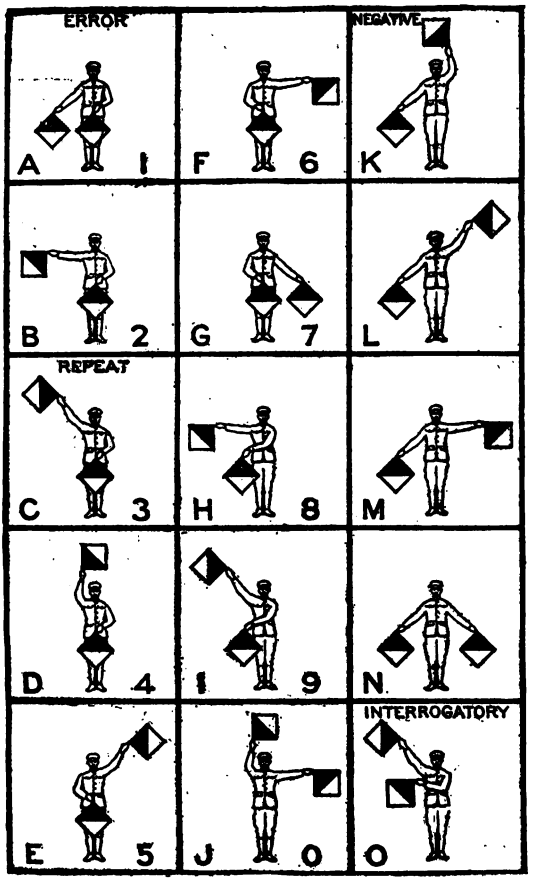
4. If the receiver sees that the sender's mirror needs adjustment, he will turn on a steady flash until answered by a steady flash. When the adjustment is satisfactory the receiver will cut off his flash and the sender will resume his message.

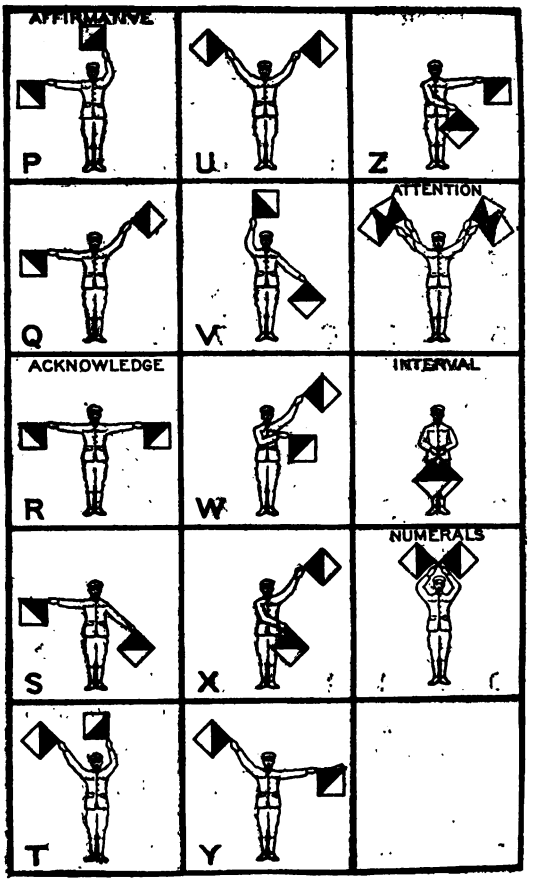
5. To break the sending station for other purposes, turn on a steady flash.

Sound signals.

1. Sound signals made by the whistle, foghorn, bugle, trumpet, and drum may be well used in a fog, mist, falling snow, or at night. They may be used with the dot and dash code.

2. In applying the code to whistle, foghorn, bugle, or trumpet, one short blast indicates a dot and one long blast a dash. With the drum, one tap indicates a dot and two taps in rapid succession a dash. Although these signals can be used with a dot and dash code, they should be used in connection with a preconcerted or conventional code.


ERROR
A 1
F 6
NEGATIVE
K
B 2
G 7
L
REPEAT
C 3
H 8
M
D 4
I 9
N
E 5
J 0
INTERROGATORY
O


AFFIRMATIVE
P
U
Z
Q
V
ATTENTION
ACKNOWLEDGE
R
W
INTERVAL
S
X
NUMERALS
T
Y

PERSONAL HYGIENE.

History shows that in almost every war many more men die of disease than from wounds received in battle. Much of this disease is preventable and is due either to the ignorance or carelessness of the person who has the disease or of other persons about him. It is a terrible truth that one man who violates any of the great rules of health may be the means of killing many more of his comrades than are killed by the bullets of the enemy.

It is therefore most important that every soldier should learn how to take care of his health when in the field and that he should also insist that his comrades do not violate any of the rules prescribed for this purpose.

A great many diseases are due to germs, which are either little animals or little plants so very small that they can only be seen by aid of the microscope. All diseases caused by germs are "catching." All other diseases are not "catching."

There are only five ways of catching disease:

(*a*) Getting certain germs on the body by touching some one or something which has them on it. Thus, one may catch venereal diseases, smallpox, measles, scarlet fever, chicken pox, mumps, boils, body lice, ringworm, barber's itch, dhobie itch, and some other diseases. Wounds are infected in this manner.

(*b*) Breathing in certain germs which float in the air. In this way one may catch pneumonia, consumption, influenza, diphtheria, whooping cough, tonsillitis, spinal meningitis, measles, and certain other diseases.

(*c*) Taking certain germs in through the mouth in eating or drinking. Dysentery, cholera, typhoid fever, diarrhea, and intestinal worms may be caught in this manner.

(*d*) Having certain germs injected into the body by the bites of insects, such as mosquitoes, fleas, and bedbugs. Malaria, yellow fever, dengue fever, and bubonic plague may be caught in this way.

(*e*) Inheriting the germ from one's parents.

Persons may have these germs sometimes without apparently being sick with any disease. Such persons and persons who are sick with the diseases are a great source of danger to others about them. Germs which multiply in such persons are found in their urine and excretions from the bowels; in discharges from ulcers and abscesses; in the spit or particles coughed or sneezed into the air; in the perspiration or scales from the skin; and in the blood sucked up by biting insects.

Those who have taken care of their health and who have not become weakened by bad habits, exposure, and fatigue are not only less liable to catch disease, but are more apt to recover when taken sick.

Knowing all these things, the soldier can understand the reasons for the following rules and how important it is that they should be carried out by each and every person:

Stay away from persons having "catching" diseases.

If you have any disease, don't try to cure it yourself, but go to the surgeon. Insist that other soldiers do likewise.

Typhoid fever is one of the most dangerous and common camp diseases. Modern medicine has, however, discovered an effective preventative for this disease in the typhoid prophylactic, which renders the person immune from typhoid fever. The treatment consists in injecting into the arm a preventative serum. The injection is given three times at 10-day intervals. All enlisted men of the Organized Militia should take this prophylactic, which will be administered by the medical officer free of charge.

Association with lewd women is dangerous. It may result in disabling you for life. It is the cause of a disease (syphillis) which may be transmitted by a parent to his children. Soldiers with venereal diseases should not use basins or toilet articles used by others, as the germs of these diseases if gotten into the eye very often cause blindness. Likewise, if they use the same drinking cup used by others, they may give others the disease. They should promptly report their trouble to the surgeon, that they may receive the best medical advice and attention.

Should a soldier expose himself to infection by having intercourse with an unknown woman, he should report as soon as possible afterwards to the regimental infirmary for prophylactic treatment, which, if taken within a few hours after intercourse, will prevent to a large degree the liability of contracting any disease.

Cooked germs are dead and therefore harmless. Water, even when clear, may be alive with deadly germs. Therefore, when the conditions are such that the commanding officer orders all drinking water to be boiled, be careful to live up to this order.

Use the latrines and don't go elsewhere to relieve yourself. In open latrines cover your deposit with dirt, as it breeds flies and may also be full of germs.

Flies carry germs from one place to another. Therefore see that your food and mess kit are protected from them.

All slops and scraps of food scattered about camp soon produce bad odors and draw flies. Therefore do you part toward keeping the camp free from disease by carefully depositing such refuse in the pits or cans used for this purpose.

Urinate only in the latrines, or in the cans set out for this purpose, never on the ground around camp, because it not only causes bad smells, but urine sometimes contains the germs of "catching" diseases.

Soapy water thrown on the ground soon produces bad odors. Therefore in camps of several days' duration this water should be thrown in covered pits or in cans used for this purpose.

As certain mosquitoes can transmit malaria and yellow fever, use your mosquito bar for this reason, as well as for personal comfort.

Keep your mouth clean by brushing your teeth once or twice a day. It helps to prevent the teeth from decaying. Decayed teeth cause toothache. They also lead one to swallow food without properly chewing it, and this leads to stomach troubles of various kinds. Foods left around and between the teeth is bad for the teeth and forms good breeding places for germs.

Keep the skin clean. Through the pores of the skin the body gets rid of much waste and poisonous matter. Therefore, remove this and keep the pores open by bathing once every day, if possible. If water is scarce, rub the body over with a wet towel. If no water is at hand, take a dry rub. Wash, carefully, the arm pits, between the legs, and under the foreskin, as this will prevent chafing.

The skin protects the sensitive parts underneath from injury and helps to keep out germs. Therefore when blisters are formed don't tear off the skin. Insert a needle under the skin a little distance back from the blister and push it through to

the opposite side. Press out the liquid through the holes thus formed. Heat the needle red hot first, with a match or candle, to kill the germs.

When the skin is broken (in cuts and wounds) keep the opening covered with a bandage to keep out germs and dirt; otherwise the sore may fester. Puss is always caused by germs.

Keep your hair short. Long hair and a long beard in the field generally means a dirty head and a dirty face and favors skin diseases, lice, and dandruff.

Don't let any part of the body become chilled, as this very often is the direct cause of diarrhea, dysentery, pneumonia, rheumatism, and other diseases.

Wet clothes may be worn while marching or exercising without bad results, but there is great danger if one rests in wet clothing, as the body may become chilled.

Don't sit or lie or sleep directly on damp ground, as this is sure to chill the body.

When hot or prespiring or when wearing damp clothes, don't remain where a breeze can strike you. You are sure to become chilled.

Every day, if possible, hang your blanket and clothing out to air in the sun; shake or beat them with a small stick. Germs and vermin don't like this treatment, but damp, musty clothing suits them very well. Wash your shirts, underwear, and socks frequently. The danger of blood poisoning from a wound is greatly increased if the bullet passes through dirty clothes.

Ditch your tent as soon as you can, particularly a shelter tent, even if you camp for one night only. Otherwise a little rain may ruin a whole night's rest.

Always prepare your bed before dark. Level off the ground and scrape out a little hollow for your hips. Get some straw or dry grass, if possible. Green grass or branches from trees are better than nothing. Sleep on your poncho. This keeps the dampness from coming up from the ground and chilling the body. Every minute spent in making a good bed means about an hour's good rest later on.

Avoid the food and drink found for sale in the cheap stands about camp. The quality is generally bad, and it is often prepared in filthy places by very dirty persons.

The use of intoxicating liquor is particularly dangerous in the field. Its excessive use, even at long intervals, breaks down one's system. Drinking men are more apt to get sick and less

liable to get well than are their more sober comrades. If alcohol is taken at all, it is best after the work of the day is over. It should never be taken when the body is exposed to severe cold, as it diminishes the resistance of the body. Hot tea or coffee is much preferable under these circumstances.

THE CARE OF THE FEET.

A soldier can not march with sore feet, and marching is the main part of an infantryman's daily duty in the field. All soldiers should be familiar with the proper methods of caring for the feet. The Germans treat sore feet as a military offense, as it is generally due to carelessness, neglect, or ignorance on the part of the soldier.

The most important factor in the care of the feet and the marching ability of the soldier is the shoe. Civilian shoes, particularly light, patent leather, or low shoes, are sure to cause injury and in time will ruin a man's foot. Only the marching shoe issued by the Quartermaster Corps should be worn, and they must be properly fitted to the individual. It will not suffice to order a marching shoe of the same size as one's ordinary civilian shoes, for it must be remembered that a soldier may have to march many miles daily over rough roads and carrying a heavy pack. The pack itself causes the foot to spread out to a larger size, and the rough roads give so much exercise to the muscles of the feet that they swell greatly through the increased blood supply. (For directions as to measuring the foot for the marching shoe see General Order No. 26, War Department, 1912, a copy of which should be on hand in each company.)

Do not start out on a march wearing new shoes. This is a frequent cause of sore feet. New shoes should be properly broken in before beginning a march by wearing them for several hours daily for a week before the march, and they should be adapted to the contours of the feet by stretching them with shoe stretchers with adjustable knobs to take the pressure off painful corns and bunions. Such stretchers are issued by the Quartermaster Corps, and there should be one or more pair in every company of infantry. Should this be impracticable, then the following is suggested:

The soldier stands in his new shoes in about 2½ inches of water for about five minutes until the leather is thoroughly

pliable and moist; he should then walk for about an hour on a level surface, letting the shoes dry on his feet, to the irregularities of which the leather is thus moulded in the same way as it was previously moulded over the shoe last. On taking the shoes off a very little neat's-foot oil should be rubbed into the leather to prevent its hardening and cracking.

If it is desired to waterproof shoes at any time, a considerable amount of neat's-foot oil should be rubbed into the leather. Waterproof leather causes the feet of some men to perspire unduly and keeps them constantly soft.

Light woolen or heavy woolen socks will habitually be worn for marching. Cotton socks will not be worn unless specifically ordered by the surgeon. The socks will be large enough to permit free movement of the toes, but not so loose as to permit of wrinkling. Darned socks, or socks with holes in them, will not be worn in marching.

Until the feet have hardened they should be dusted with foot powder, which can be obtained at the regimental infirmary, before each day's march. Clean socks should be worn daily.

As soon as possible after reaching camp after a day of marching the feet should be washed with soap and water, and the soldier should put on a dry pair of socks and his extra pair of shoes from his surplus kit. If the skin is tender, or the feet perspire, wash with warm salt water or alum water, but do not soak the feet a long time, as this, although very comforting at the time, tends to keep them soft. Should blisters appear on the feet, prick and evacuate them by pricking at the lower edge with a pin which has been passed through the flame of a match and cover them with zinc oxide plaster applied hot. This plaster can be obtained on request at the regimental infirmary. If serious abrasions appear on the feet, or corns, bunions, and ingrowing nails cause trouble, have your name placed on sick report and apply to the surgeon for treatment. Cut the toe nails square (fairly close in the middle, but leaving the sides somewhat longer), as this prevents ingrowing nails.

A FEW FIRST-AID RULES.

The bandages and dressings contained in the first-aid packet have been so treated as to destroy any germs thereon. Therefore, when dressing a wound, be careful not to touch or handle that part of the dressing which is to be applied to the wound.

A sick or injured person should always be made to lie down on his back, if practicable, as this is the most comfortable position, and all muscles may be relaxed.

All tight articles of clothing and equipment should be loosened, so as not to interfere with breathing or the circulation of the blood. Belts, collars, and the trousers at the waist should be opened.

Don't let mere onlookers crowd about the patient. They prevent him from getting fresh air and also make him nervous and excited.

In case of injury the heart action is generally weak from shock, and the body, therefore, grows somewhat cold. So don't remove any more clothing than is necessary to expose the injury.

Cut or rip the clothing, but don't pull it. Try to disturb the patient as little as possible.

Don't touch a wound with your fingers or a handkerchief, or with anything else but the first-aid dressing. Don't wash the wound with water, as you may infect it.

FIG. 1.

Don't administer stimulants (whisky, brandy, wine, etc.) unless ordered to do so by a doctor. While in a few cases stimulants are of benefit, in a great many cases they do positive harm, especially where there has been any bleeding.

The heart may be considered as a pump and the arteries as a rubber hose, which carry the blood from the heart to every part of the body. The veins are the hose which carry the blood back to the heart. Every wound bleeds some, but, unless a large artery or a large vein is cut, the bleeding will stop after

a short while if the patient is kept quiet and the first-aid dressing is bound over the wound so as to make pressure on it.

When a large artery is cut the blood gushes out in spurts every time the heart beats. In this case it is necessary to stop the flow of blood by pressing upon the hose somewhere between the heart and the leak.

FIG. 2.

If the leak is in the arm or hand, apply pressure as in figure 1.

If the leak is in the leg, apply pressure as in figure 2.

If the leak is in the shoulder or armpit, apply pressure as in figure 3.

The reason for this is that at the places indicated the arteries may be pressed against a bone more easily than at any other places.

Another way of applying pressure (by means of a tourniquet) is shown in figure 4. Place a pad of tightly rolled cloth or paper, or any suitable object, over the artery. Tie a bandage loosely about the limb and then insert your bayonet, or a stick, and twist up the bandage until the pressure of the pad on the artery stops the leak. Twist the bandage slowly and stop as soon as the blood ceases to flow, in order not to bruise the flesh or muscles unnecessarily.

A tourniquet may cause pain and swelling of the limb, and if left on too long may cause the limb to die. Therefore, about every half hour or so, loosen the bandage very carefully, but if the bleeding continues pressure must be applied again. In this case apply the pressure with the thumb for five or ten minutes, as this cuts off only the main artery and leaves some of the smaller arteries and the veins free to restore some of the circulation. When a tourniquet is painful, it is too tight and should be carefully loosened a little.

FIG. 3.

If the leg or arm is held upright, this also helps to reduce the bleeding in these parts, because the heart then has to pump the blood uphill.

A broken bone is called a fracture. The great danger in the case of a fracture is that the sharp, jagged edges of the bones may stick through the flesh and skin, or tear and bruise the arteries, veins, and muscles. If the skin is not broken, a fracture is not so serious, as no germs can get in. **Therefore never move a person with a broken bone until the fracture has been so fixed that the broken ends of the bone can not move.**

If the leg or arm is broken, straighten the limb gently, and, if necessary, pull upon the end firmly to get the bones in place. Then bind the limb firmly to a splint to hold it in place. A splint may be made of any straight, stiff material—a shingle

piece of board, a bayonet, a rifle, a straight branch of a tree, etc. Whatever material you use must be well padded on the side next to the limb. Be careful never to place the bandages over the fracture, but always above and below. (Figs. 5, 6, 7, 8.)

FIG. 4—Improvised tourniquet.

Many surgeons think that the method of binding a broken leg to the well one, and of binding the arm to the body, is the best plan in the field, as being the quickest and one that serves the immediate purpose.

With wounds about the body, the chest, and abdomen you must not meddle, except to protect them, when possible without much handling, with the materials of the packet.

Fainting, Shock, Heat Exhaustion.

The symptoms of fainting, shock, and heat exhaustion are very similar. The face is pale, the skin cool and moist, the pulse is weak, and generally the patient is unconscious. Keep the patient quiet, resting on his back, with his head low. Loosen the clothing, but keep the patient warm, and give stimulants (whisky, hot coffee, tea, etc.).

FIG. 5.

FIG. 6.

Sunstroke.

In the case of sunstroke the face is flushed, the skin is dry and very hot, and the pulse is full and strong. In this case place the patient in a cool spot, remove the clothing, and make every effort to lessen the heat in the body by cold applications to the head and surface generally. Do not, under any circumstances, give any stimulants or hot drinks.

Freezing and Frostbite.

The part frozen, which looks white or bluish white, and is cold, should be very slowly raised in temperature by brisk but careful rubbing in a cool place and never near a fire. Stimulants are to be given cautiously when the patient can swallow,

and followed by small amounts of warm liquid nourishment. The object is to restore the circulation of the blood and the

FIG. 6.

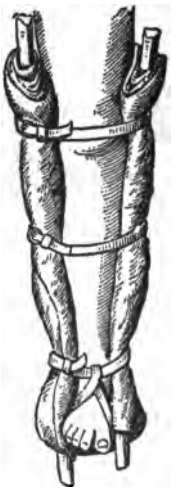


FIG. 8.

natural warmth gradually and not violently. Care and patience are necessary to do this.

RESUSCITATION OF THE APPARENTLY DROWNED.

In the instruction of the Army in First Aid the method of resuscitation of the apparently drowned, as described by "Schaefer," will be taught instead of the "Sylvester Method," heretofore used. The Schaefer method of artificial respiration is also applicable in cases of electric shock, asphyxiation by gas, and of the failure of respiration following concussion of the brain.

Being under water for four or five minutes is generally fatal, but an effort to revive the apparently drowned should always be made, unless it is known that the body has been under water for a very long time. The attempt to revive the patient should not be delayed for the purpose of removing his clothes or placing him in the ambulance. Begin the procedure as soon as he is out of the water, on the shore or in the boat. The first and most important thing is to start artificial respiration without delay.

The Schaefer method is preferred because it can be carried out by one person without assistance, and because its procedure is not exhausting to the operator, thus permitting him, if required, to continue it for one or two hours. When it is known that a person has been under water for but a few minutes continue the artificial respiration for at least one and a half to two hours before considering the case hopeless. Once the patient has begun to breathe watch carefully to see that he does not stop again. Should the breathing be very faint, or should he stop breathing, assist him again with artificial respiration. After he starts breathing do not lift him nor permit him to stand until the breathing has become full and regular.

As soon as the patient is removed from the water, turn him face to the ground, clasp your hands under his waist, and raise the body so any water may drain out of the air passages while the head remain low. (Figure 9.)

SCHAEFER METHOD.

The patient is laid on his stomach, arms extended from his body beyond his head, face turned to one side so that the mouth and nose do not touch the ground. This position causes the tongue to fall forward of its own weight and so prevents its

falling back into the air passages. Turning the head to one side prevents the face coming into contact with mud or water during

FIG. 9.—Schaefer method of artificial respiration. Inspiration.

the operation. This position also facilitates the removal from the mouth of foreign bodies, such as tobacco, chewing gum,

false teeth, etc., and favors the expulsion of mucus, blood, vomitus, serum, or any liquid that may be in the air passages.

FIG. 10.—Schaefer method of artificial respiration. Expiration.

The operator kneels, straddles one or both of the patient's thighs, and faces his head. Locating the lowest rib, the op-

erator, with his thumbs nearly parallel to his fingers, places his hands so that the little finger curls over the twelfth rib. If the hands are on the pelvic bones the object of the work is defeated; hence the bones of the pelvis are first located in order to avoid them. The hands must be free from the pelvis and resting on the lowest rib. By operating on the bare back it is easier to locate the lower ribs and avoid the pelvis. The nearer the ends of the ribs the hands are placed without sliding off the better. The hands are thus removed from the spine, the fingers being nearly out of sight.

The fingers help some, but the chief pressure is exerted by the heels (thenar and hypothenar eminences) of the hands, with the weight coming straight from the shoulders. It is a waste of energy to bend the arms at the elbows and shove in from the sides, because the muscles of the back are stronger than the muscles of the arms.

The operator's arms are held straight, and his weight is brought from his shoulders by bringing his body and shoulders forward. This weight is gradually increased until at the end of the three seconds of vertical pressure upon the lower ribs of the patient the force is felt to be heavy enough to compress the parts; then the weight is suddenly removed. If there is danger of not returning the hands to the right position again, they can remain lightly in place; but it is usually better to remove the hands entirely. If the operator is light and the patient an overweight adult, he can utilize over 80 per cent of his weight by raising his knees from the ground and supporting himself entirely on his toes and the heels of his hands, the latter properly placed on the ends of the floating ribs of the patient. In this manner he can work as effectively as a heavy man.

A light feather or a piece of absorbent cotton drawn out thin and held near the nose by some one will indicate by its movements whether or not there is a current of air going and coming with each forced expiration and spontaneous inspiration.

The natural rate of breathing is 12 to 15 times per minute. The rate of operation should not exceed this. The lungs must be thoroughly emptied by three seconds of pressure, then refilling takes care of itself. Pressure and release of pressure—one complete respiration—occupies about five seconds. If the operator is alone, he can be guided in each act by his own deep, regular respiration or by counting or by his watch lying by his side. If comrades are present, he can be advised by them.

The duration of the efforts as artificial respiration should ordinarily exceed an hour; indefinitely longer if there are any evidences of returning animation, by way of breathing, speaking, or movements. There are liable to be evidences of life within 25 minutes in patients who will recover from electric shock, but where there is doubt the patient should be given the benefit of the doubt. In drowning, especially, recoveries are on record after two hours or more of unconsciousness; hence, the Schaefer method, being easy of operation, is more likely to be persisted in.

Aromatic spirits of ammonia may be poured on a handkerchief and held continuously within 3 inches of the face and nose. If other ammonia preparations are used, they should be diluted or held farther away. Try it on your own nose first.

When the operator is a heavy man it is necessary to caution him not to bring force too violently upon the ribs, as one of them might be broken.

Do not attempt to give liquids of any kind to the patient while unconscious. Apply warm blankets and hot-water bottles as soon as they can be obtained.

EXTRACTS FROM THE ARTICLES OF WAR.

(Relating to enlisted men.)

SEC. 1342. The armies of the United States shall be governed by the following rules and articles: The word officer, as used therein, shall be understood to designate commissioned officers; the word soldier shall be understood to include noncommissioned officers, musicians, artificers, and privates, and other enlisted men; and the convictions mentioned therein shall be understood to be convictions by court-martial.

ARTICLES TO BE READ TO RECRUITS.

ART. 2. These rules and articles shall be read to every enlisted man at the time of, or within six days after, his enlistment, and he shall thereupon take an oath or affirmation in the following form: "I, A. B., do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the United States of America; that I will serve them honestly and faithfully against all their enemies whomsoever; and that I will obey the orders of the President of the United States, and the orders of the officers appointed over me, according to the rules and articles of war." This oath may be taken before any commissioned officer of the Army.

DISCHARGES.

ART. 4. No enlisted man, duly sworn, shall be discharged from the service without a discharge in writing, signed by a field officer of the regiment to which he belongs, or by the commanding officer, when no field officer is present; and no discharge shall be given to any enlisted man before his term of

service has expired, except by the order of the President, the Secretary of War, the commanding officer of a department, or by sentence of a general court-martial.

FURLOUGHS.

ART. 11. Every officer commanding a regiment or an independent troop, battery, or company, not in the field, may, when actually quartered with such command, grant furloughs to the enlisted men in such numbers and for such time as he shall deem consistent with the good of the service. Every officer commanding a regiment, or an independent troop, battery, or company, in the field, may grant furloughs not exceeding 30 days at one time, to 5 per cent of the enlisted men, for good conduct in the line of duty, but subject to the approval of the commander of the forces of which said enlisted men form a part. Every company officer of a regiment commanding any troop, battery, or company not in the field, or commanding in any garrison, fort, post, or barrack, may, in the absence of his field officer, grant furloughs to the enlisted men for a time not exceeding 20 days in 6 months and not to more than two persons to be absent at the same time.

WASTING AMMUNITION.

ART. 16. Any enlisted man who sells or willfully or through neglect wastes the ammunition delivered out to him shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

LOSING OR SPOILING ACCOUTERMENTS, ETC.

ART. 17. Any soldier who sells or through neglect loses or spoils his horse, arms, clothing, or accouterments shall be punished as a court-martial may adjudge, subject to such limitations as may be prescribed by the President by virtue of the power vested in him. (G. O. 57, 1892.)

DISRESPECTFUL WORDS AGAINST THE PRESIDENT, ETC.

ART. 19. Any officer who uses contemptuous or disrespectful words against the President, the Vice President, the Congress

of the United States, or the chief magistrate or legislature of any of the United States in which he is quartered, shall be dismissed from the service, or otherwise punished, as a court-martial may direct. Any soldier who so offends shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

DISRESPECT TOWARD COMMANDING OFFICER.

ART. 20. Any officer or soldier who behaves himself with disrespect toward his commanding officer shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

STRIKING A SUPERIOR OFFICER.

ART. 21. Any officer or soldier who, on any pretense whatsoever, strikes his superior officer, or draws or lifts up any weapon, or offers any violence against him, being in the execution of his office, or disobeys any lawful command of his superior officer, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

MUTINY.

ART. 22. Any officer or soldier who begins, excites, causes, or joins in any mutiny or sedition in any troop, battery, company, party, post, detachment, or guard shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

QUARRELS AND FRAYS.

ART. 24. All officers, of what condition soever, have power to part and quell all quarrels, frays, and disorders, whether among persons belonging to his own or to another corps, regiment, troop, battery, or company, and to order officers into arrest, and noncommissioned officers and soldiers into confinement, who take part in the same, until their proper superior officer is acquainted therewith. And whosoever, being so ordered, refuses to obey such officer or noncommissioned officer, or draws a weapon upon him, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

REPROACHFUL OR PROVOKING SPEECHES.

ART. 25. No officer or soldier shall use any reproachful or provoking speeches or gestures to another. Any officer who so offends shall be put in arrest. Any soldier who so offends shall be confined and required to ask pardon of the party offended, in the presence of his commanding officer.

CHALLENGES TO FIGHT DUELS.

ART. 26. No officer or soldier shall send a challenge to another officer or soldier to fight a duel, or accept a challenge so sent. Any officer who so offends shall be dismissed from the service. Any soldier who so offends shall suffer such corporal punishment as a court-martial may direct.

ALLOWING PERSONS TO GO OUT AND FIGHT; SECONDS AND PROMOTERS.

ART. 27. Any officer or noncommisioned officer, commanding a guard, who knowingly and willingly suffers any person to go forth to fight a duel shall be punished as a challenger; and all seconds or promoters of duels and carriers of challenges to fight duels shall be deemed principals, and punished accordingly. It shall be the duty of any officer commanding an army, regiment, troop, battery, company, post, or detachment, who knows or has reason to believe that a challenge has been given or accepted by any officer or enlisted man under his command, immediately to arrest the offender and bring him to trial.

UPBRAIDING ANOTHER FOR REFUSING CHALLENGE.

ART. 28. Any officer or soldier who upbraids another officer or soldier for refusing a challenge shall himself be punished as a challenger; and all officers and soldiers are hereby discharged from any disgrace or opinion of disadvantage which might arise from their having refused to accept challenges, as they will only have acted in obedience to the law and have done their duty as good soldiers who subject themselves to discipline.

WRONGS TO SOLDIERS, REDRESS OF.

ART. 30. Any soldier who thinks himself wronged by any officer may complain to the commanding officer of his regiment, who shall summon a regimental court-martial for the doing of justice to the complainant. Either party may appeal from such regimental court-martial to a general court-martial; but if upon such second hearing the appeal appears to be groundless and vexatious, the party appealing shall be punished at the discretion of said court-martial.

LYING OUT OF QUARTERS.

ART. 31. Any officer or soldier who lies out of his quarters, garrison, or camp without leave from his superior officer shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

SOLDIERS ABSENT WITHOUT LEAVE.

ART. 32. Any soldier who absents himself from his troop, battery, company, or detachment without leave from his commanding officer shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

ABSENCE FROM PARADE WITHOUT LEAVE.

ART. 33. Any officer or soldier who fails, except when prevented by sickness or other necessity, to repair, at the fixed time, to the place of parade, exercise, or other rendezvous appointed by his commanding officer, or goes from the same without leave from his commanding officer before he is dismissed or relieved, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

ONE MILE FROM CAMP WITHOUT LEAVE.

ART. 34. Any soldier who is found 1 mile from camp without leave in writing from his commanding officer shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

FAILING TO RETIRE AT RETREAT.

ART. 35. Any soldier who fails to retire to his quarters or tent at the beating of retreat shall be punished according to the nature of his offense.

HIRING DUTY.

ART. 36. No soldier belonging to any regiment, troop, battery, or company shall hire another to do his duty for him or be excused from duty except in cases of sickness, disability, or leave of absence. Every such soldier found guilty of hiring his duty and the person so hired to do another's duty shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

CONNIVING AT HIRING DUTY.

ART. 37. Every noncommissioned officer who connives at such hiring of duty shall be reduced. Every officer who knows and allows such practices shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

DRUNK ON DUTY.

ART. 38. Any officer who is found drunk on his guard, party, or other duty shall be dismissed from the service. Any soldier who so offends shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial may direct. No court-martial shall sentence any soldier to be branded, marked, or tattooed.

SENTINEL SLEEPING ON POST.

ART. 39. Any sentinel who is found sleeping upon his post or who leaves it before he is regularly relieved shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

QUITTING GUARD, ETC., WITHOUT LEAVE.

ART. 40. Any officer or soldier who quits his guard, platoon, or division without leave from his superior officer, except in a case of urgent necessity, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

MISBEHAVIOR BEFORE THE ENEMY, COWARDICE, ETC.

ART. 42. Any officer or soldier who misbehaves himself before the enemy, runs away, or shamefully abandons any fort, post, or guard which he is commanded to defend, or speaks words

inducing others to do the like, or casts away his arms or ammunition, or quits his post or colors to plunder or pillage, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

COMPELLING A SURRENDER.

ART. 43. If any commander of any garrison, fortress, or post is compelled, by the officers and soldiers under his command, to give up to the enemy or to abandon it, the officers or soldiers so offending shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

DISCLOSING WATCHWORD.

ART. 44. Any person belonging to the armies of the United States who makes known the watchword to any person not entitled to receive it, according to the rules and discipline of war, or presumes to give a parole or watchword different from that which he received, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

RELIEVING THE ENEMY.

ART. 45. Whosoever relieves the enemy with money, victuals, or ammunition, or knowingly harbors or protects an enemy, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

CORRESPONDING WITH THE ENEMY.

ART. 46. Whosoever holds correspondence with or gives intelligence to the enemy, either directly or indirectly, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

DESERTION.

ART. 47. Any officer or soldier who, having received pay, or having been duly enlisted in the service of the United States, deserts the same, shall, in time of war, suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and in time of peace, any punishment, excepting death, which a court-martial may direct.

DESERTER SHALL SERVE FULL TERM.

ART. 48. Every soldier who deserts the service of the United States shall be liable to serve for such period as shall, with the time he may have served previous to his desertion, amount to the full term of his enlistment; and such soldier shall be tried by a court-martial and punished, although the term of his enlistment may have elapsed previous to his being apprehended and tried.

ENLISTING IN OTHER REGIMENT WITHOUT DISCHARGE.

ART. 50. No noncommissioned officer or soldier shall enlist himself in any other regiment, troop, or company without a regular discharge from the regiment, troop, or company in which he last served, on a penalty of being reputed a deserter, and suffering accordingly. And in case any officer shall knowingly receive and entertain such noncommissioned officer or soldier, or shall not, after his being discovered to be a deserter, immediately confine him and give notice thereof to the corps in which he last served, the said officer shall, by a court-martial, be cashiered.

ADVISING TO DESERT.

ART. 51. Any officer or soldier who advises or persuades any other officer or soldier to desert the service of the United States shall, in time of war, suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and in time of peace, any punishment, excepting death, which a court-martial may direct.

MISCONDUCT AT DIVINE SERVICE.

ART. 52. It is earnestly recommended to all officers and soldiers diligently to attend divine service. Any officer who behaves indecently or irreverently at any place of divine worship shall be brought before a general court-martial, there to be publicly and severely reprimanded by the president thereof. Any soldier who so offends shall, for his first offense, forfeit one-sixth of a dollar; for each further offense he shall forfeit a like sum and shall be confined 24 hours. The money so for-

feited shall be deducted from his next pay and shall be applied, by the captain or senior officer of his troop, battery, or company, to the use of the sick soldiers of the same.

PROFANE OATHS.

ART. 53. Any officer who uses any profane oath or execration shall, for each offense, forfeit and pay $1. Any soldier who so offends shall incur the penalties provided in the preceding article; and all moneys forfeited for such offenses shall be applied as therein provided.

WASTE OR SPOIL, AND DESTRUCTION OF PROPERTY WITHOUT ORDERS.

ART. 55. All officers and soldiers are to behave themselves orderly in quarters and on the march; and whoever commits any waste or spoil, either in walks or trees, parks, warrens, fish ponds, houses, gardens, grain fields, inclosures, or meadows, or maliciously destroys any property whatsoever belonging to inhabitants of the United States (unless by order of a general officer commanding a separate army in the field), shall, besides such penalties as he may be liable to by law, be punished as a court-martial may direct.

VIOLENCE TO PERSONS BRINGING PROVISIONS.

ART. 56. Any officer or soldier who does violence to any person bringing provisions or other necessaries to the camp, garrison, or quarters of the forces of the United States in foreign parts shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

FORCING A SAFEGUARD.

ART. 57. Whosoever, belonging to the armies of the United States in foreign parts, or at any place within the United States or their Territories during rebellion against the supreme authority of the United States, forces a safeguard shall suffer death.

CERTAIN CRIMES DURING REBELLION.

ART. 58. In time of war, insurrection, or rebellion, larceny, robbery, burglary, arson, mayhem, manslaughter, murder, assault and battery with an intent to kill, wounding by shooting or stabbing, with an intent to commit murder, rape, or assault and battery with an intent to commit rape, shall be punishable by the sentence of a general court-martial, when committed by persons in the military service of the United States, and the punishment in any such case shall not be less than the punishment provided for the like offense by the laws of the State, Territory, or district in which such offense may have been committed

OFFENDERS TO BE DELIVERED UP TO CIVIL MAGISTRATE.

ART. 59. When any officer or soldier is accused of a capital crime or of any offense against the person or property of any citizen of any of the United States which is punishable by the laws of the land, the commanding officer and the officers of the regiment, troop, battery, company, or detachment to which the person so accused belongs, are required, except in time of war, upon application duly made by or in behalf of the party injured, to use their utmost endeavors to deliver him over to the civil magistrate, and to aid the officers of justice in apprehending and securing him, in order to bring him to trial. If, upon such application, any officer refuses or willfully neglects, except in time of war, to deliver over such accused person to the civil magistrates or to aid the officers of justice in apprehending him, he shall be dismissed from the service.

CERTAIN CRIMES OR FRAUD AGAINST THE UNITED STATES.

ART. 60. Any person in the military service of the United States who makes or causes to be made any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, knowing such claim to be false or fraudulent; or

Who presents or causes to be presented to any person in the civil or military service thereof for approval or payment any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, knowing such claim to be false or fraudulent; or

Who enters into any agreement or conspiracy to defraud the United States by obtaining or aiding others to obtain the allowance or payment of any false or fraudulent claim; or

Who for the purpose of obtaining or aiding others to obtain the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or against any officer thereof, makes or uses, or procures or advises the making or use of, any writing or other paper, knowing the same to contain any false or fraudulent statement; or

Who for the purpose of obtaining or aiding others to obtain the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or any officer thereof makes, or procures or advises the making of, any oath to any fact or to any writing or other paper, knowing such oath to be false; or

Who for the purpose of obtaining or aiding others to obtain the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or any officer thereof forges or counterfeits, or procures or advises the forging or counterfeiting of, any signature upon any writing or other paper, or uses, or procures, or advises the use of any such signature, knowing the same to be forged or counterfeited; or

Who, having charge, possession, custody, or control of any money or other property of the United States, furnished or intended for the military service thereof, knowingly delivers, or causes to be delivered, to any person having authority to receive the same, any amount thereof less than that for which he receives a certificate or receipt; or

Who, being authorized to make or deliver any paper certifying the receipt of any property of the United States, furnished or intended for the military service thereof, makes or delivers to any person such writing, without having full knowledge of the truth of the statements therein contained, and with intent to defraud the United States; or

Who steals, embezzles, knowingly and willfully misappropriates, applies to his own use or benefit, or wrongfully or knowingly sells or disposes of any ordnance, arms, equipments, ammunition, clothing, subsistence stores, money, or other property of the United States, furnished or intended for the military service thereof; or

Who knowingly purchases, or receives in pledge for any obligation or indebtedness, from any soldier, officer, or other person

who is a part of or employed in said forces or service, any ordnance, arms, equipments, ammunition, clothing, subsistence stores, or other property of the United States, such soldier, officer, or other person not having lawful right to sell or pledge the same,

Shall, on conviction thereof, be punished by fine or imprisonment, or by such other punishment as a court-martial may adjudge, or by any or all of said penalties. And if any person, being guilty of any of the offenses aforesaid, while in the military service of the United States, receives his discharge, or is dismissed from the service, he shall continue to be liable to be arrested and held for trial and sentence by a court-martial, in the same manner and to the same extent as if he had not received such discharge nor been dismissed.

CRIMES AND DISORDERS TO PREJUDICE OF MILITARY DISCIPLINE.

ART. 62. All crimes not capital, and all disorders and neglects, which officers and soldiers may be guilty of, to the prejudice of good order and military discipline, though not mentioned in the foregoing Articles of War, are to be taken cognizance of by a general, or a regimental, garrison, or a field officers' court-martial, according to the nature and degree of the offense, and punished at the discretion of such court.

SEC. 3. That fraudulent enlistment, and the receipt of any pay or allowance thereunder, is hereby declared a military offense and made punishable by court-martial, under the sixty-second article of war.—[G. O. 57, 1892.]

ALL TROOPS SUBJECT TO ARTICLES OF WAR.

ART. 64. The officers and soldiers of any troops, whether militia or others, mustered and in pay of the United States, shall, at all times and in all places, be governed by the Articles of War, and shall be subject to be tried by court-martial.

SOLDIERS ACCUSED OF CRIME.

ART. 66. Soldiers charged with crime shall be confined until tried by court-martial or released by proper authority.

DURATION OF CONFINEMENT.

ART. 70. No officer or soldier put in arrest shall be continued in confinement more than eight days, or until such time as a court-martial can be assembled.

CHALLENGES BY PRISONER.

ART. 88. Members of a court-martial may be challenged by a prisoner, but only for cause stated to the court. The court shall determine the relevancy and validity thereof, and shall not receive a challenge to more than one member at a time.

PRISONER STANDING MUTE.

ART. 89. When a prisoner, arraigned before a general court-martial, from obstinacy and deliberate design, stands mute, or answers foreign to the purpose, the court may proceed to trial and judgment as if the prisoner had pleaded not guilty.

JUDGE ADVOCATE, PROSECUTOR, AND COUNSEL FOR PRISONER.

ART. 90. The judge advocate, or some person deputed by him or by the general or officer commanding the Army, detachment, or garrison, shall prosecute in the name of the United States; but when the prisoner has made his plea, he shall so far consider himself counsel for the prisoner as to object to any leading question to any of the witnesses, and to any question to the prisoner the answer to which might tend to criminate himself.

CONTINUANCES.

ART. 93. A court-martial shall, for reasonable cause, grant a continuance to either party, for such time, and as often, as may appear to be just: *Provided*, That if the prisoner be in close confinement, the trial shall not be delayed for a period longer than 60 days.

FLOGGING.

ART. 98. No person in the military service shall be punished by flogging, or by branding, marking, or tattooing on the body.

NO PERSON TRIED TWICE FOR SAME, ETC.

ART. 102. No person shall be tried a second time for the same offense.

LIMITATION OF TIME OF PROSECUTION.

ART. 103. No person shall be liable to be tried and punished by a general court-martial for any offense which appears to have been committed more than two years before the issuing of the order for such trial, unless by reason of having absented himself, or of some other manifest impediment, he shall not have been amenable to justice within that period.

"No person shall be tried or punished by a court-martial for desertion in time of peace and not in the face of an enemy, committed more than two years before the arraignment of such person for such offense, unless he shall meanwhile have absented himself from the United States, in which case the time of his absence shall be excluded in computing the period of the limitation: *Provided*, That said limitation shall not begin until the end of the term for which said person was mustered into the service." (Act approved Apr. 11, 1890.)

PARTY ENTITLED TO A COPY.

ART. 114. Every party tried by a general court-martial shall, upon demand thereof, made by himself or by any person in his behalf, be entitled to a copy of the proceedings and sentence of such court.

DECEASED SOLDIER'S EFFECTS.

ART. 126. In case of the death of any soldier the commanding officer of his troop, battery, or company shall immediately secure all his effects then in camp or quarters, and shall, in the presence of two other officers, make an inventory thereof, which he shall transmit to the office of the Department of War.

EFFECTS OF DECEASED OFFICERS AND SOLDIERS TO BE ACCOUNTED FOR.

ART. 127. Officers charged with the care of the effects of deceased officers or soldiers shall account for and deliver the

same, or the proceeds thereof, to the legal representatives of such deceased officers or soldiers. And no officer so charged shall be permitted to quit the regiment or post until he has deposited in the hands of the commanding officer all the effects of such deceased officers or soldiers not so accounted for and delivered.

ARTICLES OF WAR TO BE PUBLISHED ONCE IN SIX MONTHS TO EVERY REGIMENT, ETC.

ART. 128. The foregoing articles shall be read and published once in every six months, to every garrison, regiment, troop, or company in the service of the United States, and shall be duly observed and obeyed by all officers and soldiers in said service.

ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE SPANISH ALPHABET.

A is sounded as *a* in *far*.
B sounds as in English.
C before *a, o, u,* at the end of a word, or before a consonant, has the sound of *k* in English; before *e, i,* as *th* in *thin*.
Ch as the English *ch* in *church*.
D as *d* in *day*.
E always pronounced as *e* in *get*.
F as in *far*.
G before *a, o, u,* as in English; before *e, i,* as a strongly aspirated *h*.
H is always silent.
I is sounded as *ee* in *feet*.
J has a guttural sound like a very strongly aspirated *h*.
L as the English *l* in *lion*.
LL as in English in the words *William, bullion*.
M as in English.
N as in English.
Ñ as *ni* in *onion*, or *gn* in *mignon*.
O always sounded like *o* in *no*.
P as in English.
Q sounded like *k*, and is never used without *u;* the *u* is, however, always silent.
R is sounded like *r* in *rose*.
RR is sounded like the English *r* prolonged and hard.
S always as is *sin*.
T as in English.
U as in *full*.
V as in English.
X as in *expression*.
Y as *e* in English.
Z like *th* in *thin* in Latin America; as in *zebra* in Spain.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Vd. is pronounced *usted*.
Vds. is pronounced *ustedes*.
y is pronounced like *e* in English.

COMMON WORDS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.	ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
Afternoon	Tarde.	Head	Cabeza.
Army	Ejército.	Headquarters	Cuartel general.
Bandage	Venda.	Horse	Caballo.
Bath	Baño.	Interpreter	Intérprete.
Bayonet	Bayoneta.	Knife	Cuchillo.
Bed	Cama.	Lake	Lago.
Blanket	Manta.	Man	Hombre.
Boy	Muchacho.	Meat	Carne.
Bullet	Bala.	Name	Nombre.
Camp	Campamento	Night	Noche.
Cartridge	Cartucha.	Noon	Mediodía.
Child	Niño.	Machine gun	Ametralladora.
Cook	Cocinero (mas.). Cocinera (fem.).	Mess call	Toque de rancho.
Dance	Baile.	Password	Santo y seña.
Dark	Oscuro.	Pay	Paga.
Day	Día.	Prisoner	Preso.
Dead	Muerto.	Recruit	Recluta.
Deserter	Deserto.	Restaurant	Fonda.
Door	Puerta.	Road	Camino.
Farm	Hacienda.	Retreat	Retreta.
Firearms	Armas de fuego.	Reveille	Diana.
Field gun	Cañon de campagña.	Saber	Sable.
Flag	Bandera.	Saddle	Silla (Montura).
Forest	Bosque.	Side arms	Armas blancas.
Friend	Amigo.	Shoe	Zapato.
Girl	Muchacha.	Shotgun	Escopeta.
Guide	Guía.	Sick	Enfermo.
Gun	Fusil.	Soup	Sopa.
Halt	Alto.	Spy	Espía.
Hand	Mano.	Supper	Cena.
Hat	Sombrero.	Sword	Espada.
		Tent	Tienda de campaña.

NUMERALS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.	ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
One	Uno, una.	Twelve	Doce.
Two	Dos.	Thirteen	Trece.
Three	Tres.	Fourteen	Catorce.
Four	Cuatro.	Fifteen	Quince.
Five	Cinco.	Sixteen	Diez y seis.
Six	Seis.	Seventeen	Diez y siete.
Seven	Siete.	Eighteen	Diez y ocho.
Eight	Ocho.	Nineteen	Diez y nueve.
Nine	Nueve.	Twenty	Veinte.
Ten	Diez.	Twenty-one	Veintiuno.
Eleven	Once.	Thirty	Treinta.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.	ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
Thirty-one	Treinta y uno.	Four hundred	Quatrocientos.
Forty	Cuarenta.	Five hundred	Quinientos.
Fifty	Cincuenta.	Six hundred	Seiscientos.
Sixty	Sesenta.	Seven hundred	Setecientos.
Eighty	Ochenta.	Eight hundred	Ochocientos.
Ninety	Noventa.	Nine hundred	Novecientos.
One hundred	Ciento.	One thousand	Mil.
One hundred and one.	Ciento uno.	One thousand one hundred.	Mil cientos.
Two hundred	Doscientos.	Two thousand	Dos mil.
Three hundred	Trescientos.	Million	Millón.

CURRENCY, MEASURES, AND WEIGHTS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
1 cent	1 centavo.
20 cents	1 peseta.
1 dollar (about 50 cents, United States)	1 peso.
1 meter (1.0936 yards)	1 metro.
1 kilometer (five-eighths of a mile)	1 kilómetro.
1 league (2.604375 miles)	1 legua.
0.77130 grain avoirdupois	1 grano.
1.0148 ounces avoirdupois	1 onza.
1.01444 pounds avoirdupois	1 libra.
25.361 pounds avoirdupois	1 arroba.
101.444 pounds avoirdupois	1 quintal.

DAYS, MONTHS, AND SEASONS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.	ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
Sunday	Domingo.	October	Octubre.
Monday	Lunes.	November	Noviembre.
Tuesday	Martes.	December	Diciembre.
Wednesday	Miércoles.	The seasons	Las estaciones.
Thursday	Jueves.	Winter	Invierno.
Friday	Viernes.	Spring	Primavera.
Saturday	Sábado.	Summer	Verano.
January	Enero.	Autumn	Otoño.
February	Febrero.	Year	Año.
March	Marzo.	Month	Mes.
April	Abril.	Week	Semana.
May	Mayo.	Day	Dia.
June	Junio.	Hour	Hora.
July	Julio.	Minute	Minuto.
August	Agosto.	Second	Segundo.
September	Setiembre.		

[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	Yo no lo quiero.
[illegible]	Dígame usted [illegible]
[illegible]	¿No se equivoca usted?
[illegible]	Sírvase darme.
[illegible]	¡Vaya adelante!
[illegible]	Quiero algo de comer.
[illegible]	¿Dónde está?
[illegible]	Vaya usted á buscarlo.
[illegible]	Lleve esta carta al corre
[illegible]	¿Cuánto cuesta?
[illegible]	Es caro.
What time is it	¿Qué hora es?
Thank you	Muchas gracias.
I am glad to make your acquaintance	Tengo mucho gusto de usted.
How far is it	¿Á qué distancia está?
What can I do for you	¿En qué puedo servirle
Don't mention it	No hay de qué.
Do you speak English	¿Habla usted inglés?
Do you speak Spanish	¿Habla usted español?
I do not speak English very well	No habla inglés muy
Where do you come from	¿De dónde viene usted
How did you come	¿Cómo ha venido uste

MILITARY TITLES, RANKS, AND GRADES.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
ral officers	Los generales.
ral staff	El Estado mayor.
l officers	Los jefes.
pany officers	Los oficiales.
commissioned officer	Las clases.
iers	Los soldados.
nel	El coronel.
or	El comandante.
tain	El capitán.
tenant	El teniente.
ctor	Un médico.
rgeant	Un sargento.
orporal	Un cabo.
rivate	Un soldado raso.
ops	Las tropas.
agoner	Un carretero
orseshoer	Un herrador.
addler	Un talabartero.
ignaler	Un señalero.
eserter	Un deserto.
ldier of Infantry	Un soldado de Infantería.
Cavalry	Caballería.
Artillery	Artillería.
Engineers	Ingenieros.
Quartermaster Corps	Administración militar.
Signal Corps	Cuerpo de señales.
Hospital Corps	Cuerpo de Sanidad.

MILITARY TERMS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
e headquarters	El cuartel general.
e transport train	El tren de transportes.
e railroad and telegraph service	El servicio de ferrocarriles y telégrafos.
squad	Una escuadra.
column	Una columna.
company	Una compañía.
battery	Una batería.
squadron (50 to 100 men)	Un escuadrón.
battalion	Un batallón.
regiment	Un regimiento.
brigade	Una brigada.
division	Una división.
detachment	Un destacamento.
e camp	El campamento.
e barracks	El cuartel.
outs	Exploradores (batidores).
trols	Patrullas.
e advance guard	La vanguardia.

COMMON PHRASES.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
Good morning, sir, madam, miss	¿Buenos dias Señor, Señora, Señorita.
Good afternoon, sir	Buenos tardes, Señor.
Good night, sir	Buenos noches, Señor.
Pardon me	Dispénseme.
How do you do	¿Cómo lo pasa usted, Señor (Cómo está Vd?)
Very well, thank you	Muy bien, gracias.
Do not trouble yourself	No se móleste usted.
I am very glad to see you	Me alegro mucho de verle à usted.
What time is it	¿Qué hora es?
Take care! Look out	¡Cuidado!
Do not bother me	No me moleste.
Stop here	Pára aquí.
Does Mr. ——— live here	Vive aquí el Señor ———?
Come in	Adelante.
You are very kind	Es usted muy amable.
At what time does the first train start.	¿Á qué hora parte el primer tren?
What is the name of this depot	¿Cómo se llama esta estación?
I want	Yo quiero.
I do not want it	Yo no lo quiero.
Let us know what I owe you	Dígame usted cuánto le debo.
Are you not mistaken	¿No se equivoca usted?
Please give me	Sírvase darme.
Move on	¡Vaya adelante!
I want something to eat	Quiero algo de comer.
Where is it	¿Dónde está?
Go and look for it	Vaya usted á buscarlo.
Take this letter to the post office	Lleve esta carta al correo.
How much is it	¿Cuánto cuesta?
It is dear	Es caro.
What time is it	¿Qué hora es?
Thank you	Muchas gracias.
I am glad to make your acquaintance	Tengo mucho gusto de conocer á usted.
How far is it	¿Á qué distancia está?
What can I do for you	¿En qué puedo servirle?
Don't mention it	No hay de qué.
Do you speak English	¿Habla usted inglés?
Do you speak Spanish	¿Habla usted español?
I do not speak English very well	No habla inglés muy bien.
Where do you come from	¿De dónde viene usted?
How did you come	¿Cómo ha venido usted?

MILITARY TITLES, RANKS, AND GRADES.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
General officers	Los generales.
General staff	El Estado mayor.
Field officers	Los jefes.
Company officers	Los oficiales.
Noncommissioned officer	Las clases.
Soldiers	Los soldados.
Colonel	El coronel.
Major	El comandante.
Captain	El capitán.
Lieutenant	El teniente.
A doctor	Un médico.
A sergeant	Un sargento.
A corporal	Un cabo.
A private	Un soldado raso.
Troops	Las tropas.
A wagoner	Un carretero
A horseshoer	Un herrador.
A saddler	Un talabartero.
A signaler	Un señalero.
A deserter	Un deserto.
A soldier of Infantry	Un soldado de Infantería.
Cavalry	Caballería.
Artillery	Artillería.
Engineers	Ingenieros.
Quartermaster Corps	Administración militar.
Signal Corps	Cuerpo de señales.
Hospital Corps	Cuerpo de Sanidad.

MILITARY TERMS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
The headquarters	El cuartel general.
The transport train	El tren de transportes.
The railroad and telegraph service	El servicio de ferrocarriles y telégrafos.
A squad	Una escuadra.
A column	Una columna.
A company	Una compañía.
A battery	Una batería.
A squadron (50 to 100 men)	Un escuadrón.
A battalion	Un batalón.
A regiment	Un regimiento.
A brigade	Una brigada.
A division	Una división.
A detachment	Un destacamento.
The camp	El campamento.
The barracks	El cuartel.
Scouts	Exploradores (batidores).
Patrols	Patrullas.
The advance guard	La vanguardia.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
The rear guard	La retaguardia.
Flankers	Los flanqueadores.
The main body	El grueso de la columna.
Field train	El bagaje mayor.
Sentinels	Los centinelas.
A spy	Un espía.
A flag of truce	Una bandera blanca (de tregua).
A nurse (Hospital Corps)	Un enfermero.
A litter	Una camilla.
A roll of bandages	Un paquete de vendas.
I am sick	Yo estoy enfermo.
I am wounded	Yo estoy herido.
I am constipated	Yo estoy estreñido.
I have a fever	Yo tengo fiebre.
Quinine	La quinina.
The sentinel challenges	El centinela grita.
*Halt	Alto.
*Halt, there	Alto allí.
*Who is there?	¿Quién vive?
*Countrymen	Paisanos.
*Friends	Amigos.
*Advance one	Adelante uno.
*Advance one with the countersign	Adelante uno con el santo y seña.
*Put down your arms	Deponga sus armas.
*Hands up!	Manos arriba!
*Face half about	Dé media vuelta.
*Come here	Venga acá.
Get out (beat it)	Váyase (lárgate).

UNIFORM, ARMS, CLOTHING, AND EQUIPMENT.

Clothing	La ropa.
Coat (service)	Una guerrera.
Trousers	El pataion.
Hat	El sombrero.
Shoes	Los zapatos.
Shirts	Las camisas.
Rifle	Un rifle.
Revolver	Un revólver.
Pistol	Una pistola.
Saber	Un sable.
Knapsack	La mochila.
Cartridges	La cápsulas (cartuchos).
Cartridge belt	La cartuchera.
Bridle	La brida.
Lariat	El laso.
Saddle	La silla de montar (montura).
Halter	El cabestro.

*All men detailed for guard or outpost duty in countries where Spanish is spoken by the inhabitants should be familiar with these phrases.

DESERTERS, PRISONERS, AND INHABITANTS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
What is the number or name of your regiment?	¿Cuál es el número ó nombre de su regimiento?
To what brigade does it belong?	¿A qué brigada pertenece?
To what division?	¿A qué división?
What is the name of the general?	¿Cómo se llame el general?
Where is his headquarters?	¿Dónde está su cuartel general?
Are reenforcements expected?	¿Se esperan refuerzos?
Where did any detachments go, of what strength and kind?	¿Adónde fueron algunos destacamentos, de qué fuerza y clase son?
What rumors circulate in the army?	¿Qué rumores corren en el ejército?
Are provisions abundant?	¿Son abundantes los víveres?
What is your name?	¿Cómo se llame V?
What is your business here?	¿Qué le trae a V acá?
Where do you come from, and where are you going?	¿De dónde viene y adónde va V?
Did you meet any troops marching, their kind and approximately their number?	¿Encontró V algunas tropas en marcha; de que clase son y cuál es su numero aproximado?
In what direction were they going?	¿En qué dirección iban ellos?
How are the roads and bridges?	¿Cómo están los caminos y puentes?

ROADS, COUNTRY, SUPPLIES, AND FORAGE.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
The road	El camino.
The main highway	El camino real.
A cart road	Una carretera.
A trail	Un rastro.
A crossroad	Una encrucijada.
A bridle path	Un camino de herradura.
Where does this road go?	¿Á dónde dá este camino?
Is the road in good condition?	¿Está el camino en buen estado?
Are there watering places?	¿Hay abrevaderos?
Are there hills? Are they steep?	¿Hay cuestas? Son escarpadas?
Does the telegraph line follow the side of the road?	¿Sigue el camino la línea telegráfica?
Are there good fords?	¿Hay vados buenos?
The water is pure?	¿El agua es pura?
Where is there good grass for the animals?	¿Dónde hay yerba buena para los animales?

CITIES, VILLAGES, TOWNS, HACIENDAS.

Where is the station, the telegraph office, the post office?	¿Dónde está la estación de ferrocarril, la oficina telegráfica, y el correo?
Where does the mayor live, the postmaster, the cure or pastor, the headman, the principal owner?	¿En dónde vive el alcalde, el administrador de correos, el padre, el cura, el cacique, el dueño principal?
Where are the troops?	¿Dónde están las tropas?
Is the enemy near?	¿Está cerca el enemigo?
Where is the town?	¿Dónde está el pueblo?

RAILROADS.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
The station agent	El jefe de estación.
The conductor	El conductor.
The engineer	El maquinista.
The fireman	El fogonero.
The brakeman	El garrotero.
The telegraph operator	El telegrafista.
A culvert	Una tajea.
A tunnel	Un tunel.
A bridge	Un puente.
A trestle	Un puente de caballete.
A water tank	Un tanque de agua.
A telegraph station	Una estación telegráfica.
An engine	Una máquina.
Passenger cars	Los coches de pasajeros.
Flat car	Un carro de platforma.
Box car	Un carro de carga.
Stock car	Un carro de ganado.
Train, express	Tren, expresso.
passenger	de pasajeros.
freight	de carga.
To derail a train	Descarrilar un tren.
To interrupt, cut the line	Interrumpir, cortar la línea.
To destroy a culvert	Destruir una alcantarilla.
Entrain the troops	Embarcar los tropas.
Disembark (detrain) horses	Desembarcar los caballos.
Destruction and repair	La destrucción y reparación
Is the telegraph line in good condition	Está la línea telegráfica en buen estado?
No, sir; the telegraph wires have been cut	No, señor; los hilos telegráficos han sido cortados.
The bridge over the Frio River is burned	El puente del Rio Frio se ha quemado.
The railroad traffic is interrupted	El trafico ferrocarrilero está interrumpido.

RATIONS AND FOOD.

ENGLISH.	SPANISH.
Provisions (in general)	Los víveres.
The ration	La ración.
Fresh beef	La carne fresca.
Bacon	Tocino.
Flour	La harina.
Soft bread	Pan mollete.
Hard bread	Galleta.
Corn meal	Harina de maíz.
Coffee	Café.
Sugar	Azúcar.
Eggs	Huevos (Blanquillos).
Chickens	Los pollos.
Rice	Arroz.
Fish	El pescado.
Bananas	Plántanos.
Mangoes	Mangos.
Watermelon	Melon de agua (Sandía).
I am hungry	Yo tengo hambre.
I am thirsty	Yo tengo sed.
Waiter, a cup of black coffee	Mozo, una taza de café solo.
Waiter, bring me a beefsteak	Mozo, tráigame un bifstek.

POINTS OF THE COMPASS.

North	El Norte.
Northeast	Nord-este.
East	Este.
Southeast	Sud-este.
South	Sur.
Southwest	Sud-oeste.
West	Oeste.
Northwest	Nord-oeste.

PRINCIPLES OF INFANTRY TRAINING.

Inaction gives every advantage to the enemy.

The offensive alone gives decisive results.

A quick and energetic offensive minimizes losses.

An advance against the enemy's position once entered upon must be continued. To go back under fire is to die.

The best way to hold down the fire of the enemy and to diminish his power to inflict losses is to bring the position he occupies under well conducted and continued fire.

Present as small a target as possible to the enemy by utilizing every bit of cover the ground affords.

Individual skill in marksmanship is an advantage in battle only when united with fire discipline and control.

Constant movement to the front lessens the effect of the enemy's fire. The battles of the Russo-Japanese War show that the heaviest losses are in the mid and long ranges. When close range is reached the losses diminish rapidly.

The best protection against artillery fire is a constant but irregular movement to the front. When close to the enemy's position his fire is least effective.

A knowledge of how to use the bayonet and the will to use it must often be the deciding factors in battle.

Finally:

In infantry training we can not go far wrong or fail to accomplish the best results if we keep before our minds the spirit as well as the wording of paragraph 352 of the Infantry Drill Regulations: "The duties of infantry are many and difficult. All infantry must be fit to cope with all conditions that may arise. Modern war requires but one kind of infantry—good infantry."

JUL 8 1915